

ElizabethanDrama.org

presents

the Annotated Popular Edition of

PERKIN WARBECK

By John Ford

Written c. 1630's?

Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

Featuring complete and easy-to-read annotations.

Annotations and notes © Copyright Peter Lukacs and ElizabethanDrama.org, 2022.

This annotated play may be freely copied and distributed.

PERKIN WARBECK

by JOHN FORD

Written: c. 1630's?
Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

The English:

Henry VII, King of England.
Lord Dawbney.
Sir William Stanley, Lord Chamberlain.
Earl of Oxford.
Earl of Surrey.
Fox, Bishop of Durham.
Urswick, Chaplain to the king.
Sir Robert Clifford, a rebel.
Lambert Simnel, a sometime pretender.

The Spanish:

Hialas, a Spanish agent.

The Scottish:

James IV, King of Scotland.
Earl of Huntley.
Lady Katherine Gordon, his daughter.
Jane Douglas, Lady Katherine's attendant.
Earl of Crawford.
Countess of Crawford, his wife.
Lord Dalzell, in love with Katherine.
Marchmont, a Herald.

The Rebels:

Perkin Warbeck.
Warbeck's followers:
Stephen Frion, his Secretary.
John A-Water, sometime Mayor of Cork.
Heron, a Mercer.
Sketon, a Tailor.
Astley, a Scrivener.

Sheriff, Constable, Officers, Messenger, Guards,
Soldiers, Masquers, and Attendants.

Scene:

Partly in England, partly in Scotland.
Time Covered in the Play: 1494-1499

INTRODUCTION TO THE PLAY

John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck* is the greatest historical play of the English Renaissance written by somebody not named Shakespeare. This drama is sweeping in scope, portraying the entire story of the most famous of the pretenders to the throne in Henry VII's time. Though the title character is a fraud, Ford treats him with a surprising degree of respect, even if Warbeck's advisory council is comprised of a great collection of buffoons. Pay especial attention to the refreshingly genial Earl of Huntley, one of the most endearing characters of the 17th century stage.

NOTES ON THE TEXT

The text of this play was originally adapted from the 1888 edition of Ford's plays edited by Havelock Ellis, but was then compared to the original quarto published in 1634. Consequently, much of the original wording and spelling from this earliest printing of the play has been reinstated.

NOTES ON THE ANNOTATIONS

Mention in the annotations of various editors refers to the notes supplied by these scholars for their editions of this play. Their works are cited fully below.

The most commonly cited sources are listed in the footnotes immediately below. The complete list of footnotes appears at the end of this play.

Footnotes in the text correspond as follows:

1. *Oxford English Dictionary* (OED) online.
2. Crystal, David and Ben. *Shakespeare's Words*. London; New York: Penguin, 2002.
3. Ellis, Havelock, ed. *The Best Plays of the Old Dramatists: John Ford*. London: Viztelly & Co., 1888.
5. Pickburn, J.P., and Brereton, J. Le Gay, eds. *Perkin Warbeck by John Ford*. Sydney: George Robertson & Co., 1896.
6. Gibson, Colin, ed. *The Selected Plays of John Ford*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 1986.
9. Anderson, Jr., Donald K., ed. *Perkin Warbeck*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1965.
11. Dyce, Alexander. *The Works of John Ford*, Vol. II. London: Robson and Son, 1869.

Biographical notes are adapted from the following sources:

1. James Lardner's *History of the Life and Reign of Richard the Third, to Which is Added the Story of Perkin Warbeck* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1898);

2. *Dictionary of National Biography*, edited by Leslie Stephen and Sydney Lee (London: Smith, Elder, and Co., 1885-1900);

3. The chronicles of Edward Hall (1548), Thomas Gainsford (1618) and Francis Bacon (1622). Mention of Hall, Gainsford and Bacon refers to the information appearing in these authors' old histories (see Note III below).

Historical, literary and biographical notes which are not strictly necessary to read in order to understand the play, but provide background information of possible interest, are supplied in italics.

NOTES.

I. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND.

A. The War of the Roses and Rise of King Henry VII.

The **War of the Roses** (1455-1485) was a long, thirty-year war over possession of the throne of England, fought between the descendants of two of **Edward III's** sons: the **Lancastrians**, descended from **John of Gaunt**, and the **Yorkists**, whose ancestor was John's younger brother **Edmund of Langley** (we may mention that the Yorkists were also descended from Edward's son **Lionel**, who was older than both John and Langley, but through Lionel's daughter **Philippa of Clarence**, which complicates the question of which side had the better claim, since a claim made through a female was less recognized than one made through a male).

Shakespeare's *Richard III* dramatizes the rise of **Richard, the Duke of Gloucester**, to the throne (Richard and his family were Yorkists). After Richard's older brother, **King Edward IV**, died in April 1483, the throne technically passed to Edward's oldest son, a twelve-year-old also named **Edward** (now technically **Edward V**). In Shakespeare's tragedy, Richard one-by-one eliminates all those who are ahead of him in line for the throne, starting with his older brother **George, the Earl of Clarence**, followed by Edward IV's two young sons (famously known as the **young princes**) – the above-mentioned Edward, and his younger brother Richard (styled Duke of York). In July 1483, Richard finally was crowned king himself.

Meanwhile, the leading Lancastrian claimant for the throne, **Henry Tudor, 2nd Earl of Richmond**, had been biding his time in France. Having raised an army, Henry invaded England in 1485, and, in the climactic battle of the war, defeated and killed Richard at the **Battle of Bosworth** (1485). Richmond seized the throne and was crowned **Henry VII**. Henry then married **Elizabeth of York** (Edward IV's daughter), thus uniting the two fractious houses, officially ending the long and bloody war, and commencing England's Tudor Dynasty.

B. Margaret of Burgundy, Our True Villain.

Margaret was the younger sister of **Edward IV**. Born in 1446, she was married in 1468 to **Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy**. After his death in 1477, Margaret ruled Burgundy as a skillful politician.

When Margaret's younger brother **Richard** (ruling now as Richard III) was killed at the Battle of Bosworth in 1485, the duchess became determined to do everything she could to discomfit the new Lancastrian king, **Henry VII**, the man who usurped the crown from the Yorkists. Her schemes included supporting the first important pretender to the throne, **Lambert Simnel**, who acted primarily as a figurehead for disaffected Yorkists looking to take the throne from Henry.

The Simnel revolt failing, Margaret (according to Bacon's *History*) sent out spies to find her a new and improved candidate whom she could support as an even more convincing pretender to the throne of England.

C. Perkin Warbeck's Story So Far, Part I: Youth and Training.

Peter Warbeck (1474-1499) was born in the Belgian city of **Tournai** to one **John Osbeck**, a controller of the city. In his youth, Warbeck spent time in **Antwerp**, **Bergen-op-Zoom** and **Middleburg**. In the late 1480's he lived in both **Portugal** and **Breton** in the service of a pair of knights. Having spent his childhood surrounded by natives of so many different lands, Warbeck picked up a number of languages, including English.

Margaret's agents, having stumbled across this attractive and intelligent young man, recommended him to Margaret, who found in Warbeck the perfect foil to upset, once again, the reign of the generally kindly Henry VII. Her plan: to pass Warbeck off as her nephew Richard, the junior of the young princes, whom she would claim had not been murdered in the Tower after all.

Margaret began to rigorously train Warbeck for his role as the young prince, including a program in which he was taught "*princely behaviour...[and] how he should keep state*" (Bacon, 116). He was drilled intensely on the story of his life as an English prince, so that, for the rest of his life, he would be able to relate his tale with a conviction and level of detail capable of fooling most any skeptic.

It was time to present Richard, Duke of York, whose life had been miraculously spared, to the world.

D. Perkin Warbeck's Story So Far, Part II: the Rise of the Conspiracy.

Margaret decided to introduce "Richard" to the European public by sending him to Ireland, which had a long history of supporting rebellion in most any form against her rulers in England. Accordingly, Warbeck sailed from Breton to Ireland, landing in Cork in 1491.

In Ireland, Warbeck was actually first acclaimed to be Edward, the son of Richard III's luckless brother Clarence (Edward was still living, though in the Tower of London), and then as the son of King Richard (another Edward, who died in 1484, while Richard was still king), before everyone finally settled on Warbeck's identity as the young prince, Richard, Duke of York.

Warbeck next traveled to France at the invitation of King Charles VIII, who was looking to tweak Henry during a contentious period between the two monarchs (Henry in fact briefly invaded French lands in 1492). Charles entertained Warbeck royally, but quickly evicted the Pretender from his domains once a peace treaty was signed with Henry.

Warbeck returned to Margaret, before travelling to Vienna, where he presented himself to the Holy Roman Empire's Emperor Maximilian, who was Margaret's son-in-law. Meanwhile, the conspiracy began to grow, as Yorkists in England and Flanders joined up in the hopes of reviving their fortunes.

Our story begins in 1494, as Margaret and Warbeck are pondering their next move.

II. Perkin: an English Nickname.

The given name of our pretender was **Peter**, so why was does he come down in history to us as **Perkin**?

The answer can be found in 1622's *The History of Henry the Seventh*, in which author Francis Bacon explains that young Warbeck proved to be a "dainty and effeminate" child, who as a result was "commonly called by the diminutive of his name, **Peter-kin**, or **Perkin**."

III. An Oft-Told Tale.

The story of the Pretender Perkin Warbeck, who caused such havoc in England and brought Henry so many headaches in the last decade of the 15th century, was such a popular one, that it was told in writing in loving detail in no less than four histories published in the 16th and early 17th centuries.

First was **Edward Hall**, who related the tale in his 1548 work, *The Union of the Two Noble and Illustre Families of Lancaster and York*; Hall's chronicle was followed by **William Warner's** *Albion's England* (1586), **Thomas Gainsford's** *The True and Wonderful History of Perkin Warbeck Proclaiming Himself Richard the Fourth* (1618), and finally **Francis Bacon's** *The History of the Reign of King Henry the Seventh* of 1622.

Of these four sources, Ford borrowed most heavily from the later works of Gainsford and Bacon. The next note gives examples of such adaptations.

IV. Ford Borrows Heavily from the Histories.

Readers of Francis Bacon's *The History of the Reign of King Henry the Seventh* might have experienced a sense of *déjà vu* upon hearing (or reading) the opening lines of John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck*, in which King Henry laments, "Still to be haunted...to be frightened with false apparitions of pageant majesty...Only ordained to lavish sweat and blood...to the ghosts of York."

A quick check of page 112 of Bacon's *History* might explain why Henry's anguish sounds so familiar, for here can be found this line: "At this time the king began **to be haunted** with sprites by the magic...of the Lady Margaret, who raised up the **ghost** of Richard, Duke **of York**..."

Of the four published histories which presented detailed accounts of the story of Perkin Warbeck, Ford borrowed most heavily from Gainsford and Bacon, frequently adopting imagery, phrases and vocabulary directly from their pages.

A few examples of such lifting will suffice to make our point (boldfaced words are those appropriated by Ford; all spelling is modernized):

(1) the very long, very first sentence of Gainsford's *History of Perkin Warbeck* contains this reference to the violent century preceding the events of the play:

"...I will insist the less on the...slaughters...which for 90 years filled...our commonwealth of England, with the blood and sweat of ten kings and princes of the race royal; 60 dukes and

earls; 1000 lords and knights; and 150,000 soldiers and people."

Compare this to just the *second* speech of the play, spoken by the Bishop of Durham:

**"For ninety years ten English kings and princes,
Threescore great dukes and earls, a thousand lords
And valiant knights, two hundred fifty thousand
Of English subjects have in civil wars
Been sacrificed to an uncivil thirst
Of discord and ambition."**

(2) Gainsford introduces Margaret of Burgundy into his story with this metaphor:

*"In the meantime, the fire-brand and fuel of this contention,
Lady Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy, had blown the coals to
such a heat..."*

Ford similarly introduces the duchess in the play's fourth speech, spoken by the Earl of Oxford:

*"Margaret of Burgundy
Blows fresh coals of division."*

(3) Finally, Bacon tells us that Warbeck wished to relate in private to King James the story of his escape from being murdered along with his supposed older brother Edward:

(quoting Perkin) *"For the manner of my escape, it is fit it
should pass in silence, or (at least) in a more secret relation:
for that it may concern some alive, and the memory of some that
are dead."*

We may compare this to Perkin's speech in Ford's play, Act II.i:

*"As for the manner...of my escape...
Great sir, 'tis fit I over-pass in silence;
Reserving the relation to the secrecy
Of your own princely ear, since it concerns
Some great ones living yet, and others dead,
Whose issue might be questioned."*

Several other dramatic examples of Ford's close adaptation of the language of his sources are provided in the annotations.

V. Textual Inconsistencies and Oddities.

It is a common experience for those who study the original text of an Elizabethan publication to find individual words printed with wildly different spellings and alternate forms throughout the text. Though the 17th century witnessed the gradual standardization of spelling in English, there are still a large number of words in 1634's *Perkin Warbeck* which appear in both their modern and now-obsolete alternate forms.

Examples include (modern form first):

he and *'a*; *hither* and *hether*; *bankrupt* and *bankrout*; *spoke* and *spake*; and *partake* and *pertake*. Later editors of this play tend to employ the modern version of these words, but since the distinct forms of these words suggest slightly different pronunciations, we print the form which appears in the quarto in each individual instance.

John Ford also had his own individual quirk with respect to second person pronouns: he was very fond of using *ye* for *you*, and used both interchangeably and inconsistently; but in *Perkin Warbeck*, he also frequently used *ee* as an alternate form of *ye*! Again, unlike other editors, we stick closely to whichever form appears in the quarto in each instance.

Finally, we find in the quarto three unusual and unpunctuated contractions, *ith*, *oth* and *toth*: the first is a contraction of *is the*, the second, *of the* and the last, *to the*. Editors typically print these words respectively as *i' th'*, *o' th'*, and *t' th'*. Ford employed these whenever he needed a single-syllable version of *in the*, *of the*, or *to the*.

VI. Scene Breaks, Settings, and Stage Directions.

Perkin Warbeck was originally published in a 1634 quarto. As usual, we lean towards adhering to the wording of this earliest volume as much as possible.

Words or syllables which have been added to the original text to clarify the sense or repair the meter are surrounded by hard brackets []; these additions are often adopted from the suggestions of later editors. A director who wishes to remain truer to the original text may of course choose to omit any of the supplementary wording.

The 1634 quarto divides *Perkin Warbeck* into Acts but not scenes, though the scene breaks are fairly obvious; nor does the quarto signal asides or identify settings. Settings and asides have been adopted from Ellis.³

Finally, as is our normal practice, a good number of the quarto's stage directions have been modified, and others added, usually without comment, to give clarity to the action. Most of these changes are adopted from Ellis.

PERKIN WARBECK

by JOHN FORD

Written: c. 1630's?
Earliest Extant Edition: 1634

PROLOGUE

1 Studies have, of this nature, been of late
2 So out of fashion, so unfollowed, that
It is become more justice to revive
4 The antic follies of the times, then strive

To countenance wise industry: no want
6 Of art doth render wit or lame or scant,
Or slothful, in the purchase of fresh bays;

8 But want of truth in them who give the praise
To their self-love, presuming to outdo
10 The writer, or (for need) the actors too.
But such this author's silence best befits,
12 Who bids them, be in love with their own wits:

From him, to clearer judgements, we can say,
14 He shews a history, couched in a play:

A history of noble mention, known,
16 Famous, and true: most noble, 'cause our own:
Not forged from Italy, from France, from Spain,
18 But chronicled at home; as rich in strain
Of brave attempts as ever fertile rage
20 In action could beget to grace the stage.

We cannot limit scenes, for the whole land
22 Itself appeared too narrow to withstand
Competitors for kingdoms: nor is here
24 Unnecessary mirth forced, to endear
A multitude; on these two rests the fate
26 Of worthy expectation: TRUTH and STATE.

The Prologue: note that the Prologue is written in rhyming couplets.

1-5: *Studies...industry* = historical plays have grown so *out of fashion*, that companies have found it preferable to re-stage old-fashioned farcical comedies than to support new and serious drama on which playwrights work so hard.
so unfollowed = few history plays were written after 1613's Henry VIII.⁶

5-7: *no want...bays* = it is not that writers lack skill (*want art*), which would render them incapable of writing such plays, nor are there too few authors who are willing, or too many authors who are too lazy, to attempt to win accolades (by writing new history plays).⁹
fresh bays = allusion to the garland of bay leaves bestowed on poets in ancient times.⁹

8-10: Ford refers to the lack of integrity amongst those who think they are better than playwrights and actors.

11-12: Ford prefers to remain silent on this matter, and is very happy to let those others admire their own cleverness.

13-14: Ford presents a history play for those people with perceptive natures.
shews = shows, a common alternate form.
couched = set down.⁶

= '*cause our own* = ie. because it is an English history.

18-20: *as rich...stage* = as noble a lineage (*rich in strain*) of excellent endeavors presented in a passionate performance as has ever been presented on the stage.^{1,6}
Note the birthing metaphor with *fertile* and *beget*.

23-25: *nor is...multitude* = there is no broad comedy presented here just to please the masses.
= the following two qualities.
= (1) matters of state, and (2) dignity.⁶

ACT I.

SCENE I.

Westminster,
The Royal Presence-Chamber.

Enter King Henry, supported to the throne by the
Bishop of Durham and Sir William Stanley;
Earls of Oxford and Surrey, and Lord Dawbney.
A Guard.

1 **King Hen.** Still to be haunted, still to be pursued,
2 Still to be frighted with false apparitions
Of pageant majesty and new-coined greatness,

4 As if we were a mockery king in state,

Only ordained to lavish sweat and blood,

6 In scorn and laughter, to the ghosts of York,

Scene I: the royal palace at *Westminster* was the primary residence of English monarchs until it was destroyed by fire in 1512.¹⁸

Entering Characters: *King Henry VII* enters the stage with his closest advisors. Henry had attained the throne of England by defeating and killing the sitting king, Richard III, on 22 August 1485, at the Battle of Bosworth. Unfortunately, Henry's own reign has been a troubled one, as he himself has been regularly vexed by pretenders to the throne.

supported to the throne = the king is formally guided to his throne by his escorts who attach themselves to his arms.

Dawbney = the historically correct spelling of Dawbney's name was *Daubeney*, or *Dawbeney*, and in fact this latter form is the one printed by other editors of this play. Since, however, Ford employed *Dawbney*, which he adopted from Gainsford, to indicate that he intended the noble's name to be pronounced in two syllables, we too use this spelling.

Early Annotations: our notes in the first scene will be redundant with respect to key historical information, so as to help the reader firmly establish in his or her mind the sequence of military and political developments leading into Scene I, as well as the relationships between the numerous members of royalty who figure in the play's backstory.

Henry VII (1457-1509), reigned 1485-1509: *despite having been the ultimate victor in the War of the Roses, Henry's decade-long reign so far (1485-1495) has been a troubled one. The long years of bitter Civil War had created resentments on both sides, especially, naturally, for the losing Yorkists. Henry had to deal with repeated rebellions and pretenders in his quarter-century on the throne.*

1-7 (below): Henry opens the play by bemoaning the seemingly endless parade of pretenders to the English crown.

= always, relentlessly.

= illusory, without substance.¹ = newly-made.

4: **we** = Henry will always refer to himself in the third person, employing the royal "we".

mockery = imitation or travesty,¹ or subject to ridicule.²

= ie. crowned for the sole purpose of expending.

6: **In** = ie. as the target of.

ghosts of York = *York* is **Richard, third Duke of York** (1411-1460). York served **King Henry VI** in a number of capacities, including Lord Protector (which made him technically head of England's government) during Henry's occasional bouts of insanity. York's rivalries with other

Is all below our merits: yet, my lords,
 8 My friends and counsellors, yet we sit fast

In our own royal birthright; the rent face
 10 And bleeding wounds of England's slaughtered people
 Have been by us, as by the best physician,
 12 At last both thoroughly cured and set in safety;

And yet, for all this glorious work of peace,
 14 Ourselves is scarce secure.

16 **B. of Dur.** The rage of malice
 Conjures fresh spirits with the spells of York.

18 For ninety years ten English kings and princes,
 20 Threescore great dukes and earls, a thousand lords
 And valiant knights, two hundred fifty thousand
 Of English subjects have in civil wars
 22 Been sacrificed to an uncivil thirst
 Of discord and ambition: this hot vengeance

factions led gradually to open war, the conflict known today as the **War of the Roses** (1455-1485). Though initially claiming to be only defending himself, his family and his interests, York eventually sought the crown itself, asserting his right to the throne as a descendant of Edward III through Edward's son Edward Langley. York was slain at the Battle of Wakefield (30 December 1450).

York's son, also named Edward, seized the throne as **Edward IV** in 1461, then lost it in 1470 before regaining it permanently in 1471.

Henry's reference to the *ghosts of York* alludes to the pretenders to the crown who appeared during his reign by claiming to be various descendants of Richard, 3rd Duke of York: the first was **Lambert Simnel**, who claimed to be the still-living **Edward, Earl of Warwick** (Edward IV's brother Clarence's son); now comes **Perkin Warbeck**, who claims to be Edward IV's son **Richard, Duke of York**. Our play begins in 1494, when Warbeck is at large, and seemingly still on the ascendant.

= "what I deserve".

8-9: *yet we...birthright* = ie. "despite all that, I am firmly in possession of my throne, which I own by birthright." Henry may be a bit defensive here, since he himself took power by usurping Richard III.

9-12: *the rent...safety* = Henry compares himself to a doctor who has cured England after the long and bloody civil war.

rent = torn, ie. scratched.

us = ie. the royal "we", again.

as = ie. as if (they had been healed).

thoroughly = thoroughly, a common alternate form.

set = ie. like a broken bone: a medical term.

14: "I am hardly untroubled."

16-17: Durham revives Henry's opening magic metaphor with *conjures*, *spirits* and *spells*; the *spirits* are the *ghosts of York* of line 6.

18-28 (below): Durham reaches back in time to the civil war and rebellions which erupted after Henry of Bolingbroke seized the crown from Richard II in 1399 (Bolingbroke ruling as Henry IV), lasting through 1408. Bloody civil war further divided England in the form of the three-decade-long War of the Roses (1455-1485), ending only upon our present Henry's ascent to the throne. Given that the Hundred Years' War with France had also engulfed England from 1337 to 1453, Durham's point is that it is only under the current Henry's reign that true peace has finally returned to England.

.
 = barbarous.¹

<p>24 26 28</p>	<p>Of <u>the just powers above</u> to utter ruin And desolation <u>had reigned on</u>, <u>but</u> that Mercy did gently sheathe the sword of justice, In lending to this <u>blood-shrunk</u> commonwealth A new soul, new birth, in your sacred person.</p>	<p>= ie. God or Providence. = would have continued indefinitely. = except. = weakened or withered,^{1,5} ie. from being drained of its blood. 26-28: Durham's flattery of course conveniently ignores the strife that has continuously attended Henry's own reign.</p>
<p>30</p>	<p>Dawb. Edward the Fourth, after a doubtful fortune, <u>Yielded to nature</u>, leaving to his sons,</p>	<p>30: Edward lived a life of variable fortune.⁵ = ie. died.</p>
<p>32</p>	<p><u>Edward and Richard</u>, the inheritance</p>	<p>32: Edward and Richard = the two young princes.</p>
<p>34</p>	<p>Of a most bloody purchase: these young princes, Richard the tyrant, their <u>unnatural</u> uncle, Forced to a violent grave: – so just is Heaven,</p>	<p>32-33: the inheritance...purchase = Edward left his boys a throne which he himself had gained violently (a most bloody purchase) from his predecessor, Henry VI.⁶ 33-35: these young...grave = ie. the boys were killed by their uncle, Richard, Duke of Gloucester (soon to be Richard III). Richard, of course, had a motive to have the two young princes killed: he wanted to be king, but the two boys, as Edward IV's children, had a superior claim to the throne. Note that nobody ever refers to Richard as "king" in the course of our play, which would legitimize him. Note also the typically convoluted structure of this sentence, which, unraveled, would read (condensed), "Richard forced the young princes to their graves." Richard was unnatural (line 34) because he lacked any emotional connection to his own family.</p>
<p>36</p>	<p><u>Him</u> hath your majesty by your own arm, Divinely strengthened, pulled from his <u>boar's</u> sty,</p>	<p><i>In the 17th century, workmen in the Tower found a set of children's bones, which were widely believed at the time to belong to the two young princes. King Charles II had the bones reburied in Westminster Abbey. The Church of England refuses to allow the remains to be disinterred and examined in order to determine their identities.¹³</i> = ie. Richard III. = the boar was Richard III's armorial symbol; he is referred to frequently as <i>the boar</i> in Shakespeare's <i>Richard III</i>.</p>
<p>38</p>	<p>And struck the <u>black</u> usurper to a carcass.</p>	<p>38: ie. "and killed the wicked (black) usurper Richard"; the reference is to the events of 1485, in which Henry Tudor, 2nd Earl of Richmond, invaded England, and defeated and killed Richard III at the Battle of Bosworth, taking the</p>

40 Nor doth the house of York decay in honours,
Though Lancaster doth repossess his right;
For Edward's daughter is King Henry's queen, –

42 A blessèd union, and a lasting blessing
44 For this poor panting island, if some shreds,
Some useless remnant of the house of York
Grudge not at this content.

46 **Oxf.** Margaret of Burgundy
48 Blows fresh coals of division.

50 **Sur.** Painted fires,
Without or heat to scorch or light to cherish.

52

54 **Dawb.** York's headless trunk, her father; Edward's fate,
Her brother, king; the smothering of her nephews

throne for himself as our play's Henry VII.

39-41: though the Lancaster faction, by virtue of Henry's defeat of Richard III, was the victor in the War of the Roses, the Yorkists, in the end, were able to claim a share of the throne as well, when Henry (a Lancastrian) married Elizabeth of York (a Yorkist), a *daughter* of **Edward IV**.

43: *panting* = ie. from exhaustion.

43-45: *if some...content* = so long as no remaining member of the extended York clan turns rebel, claiming the throne for himself, or lends his support to some other pretender.

Grudge = grumble.^{1,5}

47-48: Unfortunately, **Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy** (1446-1503) is fostering rebellion herself.

division = dissension.⁵

As a sister to Edward IV and Richard III, Margaret was naturally a supporter of pretenders to the throne against Henry, her existence a persistent thorn in his side.

In 1468, Margaret married Charles, Duke of Burgundy, and as a result of her marriage lived the rest of her life in the Netherlands. Widowed in 1477, Margaret was a particular source of aggravation to Henry, as she supported both pretenders, Simnel and Warbeck, against him. Her dissent may have been caused in some part by the fact that Henry, when he came to the throne, had confiscated most of the dowry Edward IV had previously bestowed on her. In 1500, after the Warbeck rebellion had ended, she was forced to apologize to Henry "for her factiousness". She died in 1503.

50-51: nicely continuing Oxford's metaphor, Surrey minimizes the threats to Henry and England from pretenders and their supporters.

Painted = ie. "these are painted", meaning artificial or false.²

or heat = ie. "either heat".

53-60 (below): no matter how often God demonstrates that the Yorkists are not in His good graces, Margaret persists in making trouble for Henry. Dawbney identifies four events which, taken together, prove Heaven is on Henry's side:

- (1) the death of the Yorkist patriarch is battle;
- (2) the death of Edward IV;
- (3) the murder of the young princes; and
- (4) the overthrow and death of Richard III.

53: *York's* = read this speech as beginning with *Neither York's...*, with *nor* appearing in line 56.

York's headless trunk = *York* is Margaret's father (*her father*), Richard, 3rd Duke of York (and therefore also the father of Edward IV and Richard III). York's army, fighting in the War of the Roses, was destroyed at the Battle of Wakefield (30 December 1460), after which his head was cut off and, with a paper crown placed upon it, displayed at York.

By tyrant Gloster, brother to her nature;
 56 Nor Gloster's own confusion, – all decrees
 Sacred in Heaven, – can move this woman-monster,
 58 But that she still, from the unbottomed mine
 Of devilish policies, doth vent the ore
 60 Of troubles and sedition.

62 **Oxf.** In her age –
 Great sir, observe the wonder – she grows fruitful,
 64 Who in her strength of youth was always barren:
 Nor are her births as other mothers' are,
 66 At nine or ten months' end; she has been with child
 Eight, or seven years at least; whose twins being born, –
 68 A prodigy in nature, – even the youngest
 Is fifteen years of age at his first entrance,
 70 As soon as known ith world; tall striplings, strong
 And able to give battle unto kings,
 72 Idols of Yorkish malice.

74 **Dawb.** And but idols;
 A steely hammer crushes 'em to pieces.
 76 **K. Hen.** Lambert, the eldest, lords, is in our service,
 78 Preferred by an officious care of duty
 From the scullery to a falconer – strange example! –

80 Which shews the difference between noble natures
 And the base-born: but for the upstart duke,
 82 The new-revived York, Edward's second son,
 Murdered long since ith Tower, – he lives again,
 84 And vows to be your king.

53-54: **Edward's...king** = ie. the fate of Margaret's brother, King Edward IV.

55: **Gloster** = ie. Richard III's title before he became king.
brother to her nature = ie. Richard and Margaret possess the same refractory character.⁵

56: **confusion** = overthrow.²
 56-57: **all decrees...Heaven** = ie. even God is hostile towards the House of York.
 = remove.¹

58-60: note the dramatic mining metaphor.
unbottomed = ie. bottomless.
vent = discharge.⁶

62-72 (below): Oxford mocks Margaret, who, though nearly 50 years of age, seems to be producing new children, and furthermore, that they are born fully-grown: he is of course referring to the pretenders she supports.

64: Margaret produced no natural children of her own.

= ie. Lambert Simnel and Warbeck.

68: **A prodigy** = an abnormal birth or monstrosity.^{2,6}
the youngest = ie. Warbeck, as the most recent pretender.

= ie. "in the", a poetic monosyllabic word.

72: the pretenders are men whom the Yorkists adore and are devoted to, out of their hatred towards Lancastrians.

74: ie. they are nothing more than false gods such as Oxford describes.
 = meaning Henry.

77-79: Henry not only spared the life of the famous previous pretender, Lambert Simnel, but gave him a job, and in fact raised him later to the position of royal falconer!

= promoted because he was an eager and dutiful worker.

79: **scullery** = the department of the royal household in charge of kitchen utensils and plates.¹
example = precedent.

= ie. shows, a common alternate form; **shew** is used regularly for **show** in this play.

81-82: **but for...son** = Perkin Warbeck, a new pretender, is on the scene. Warbeck is claiming to be Edward IV's younger son, Richard, the Duke of York.

= as king, Henry will properly use **thee** when addressing the nobles individually, since he is at the top of the social ladder; in return, the nobles will always address Henry with

86 **Stan.** The throne is filled, sir.
88 **K. Hen.** True, Stanley; and the lawful heir sits on it:
A guard of angels and the holy prayers
90 Of loyal subjects are a sure defence
Against all force and counsel of intrusion. –

92 But now, my lords, put case, some of our nobles,
Our great ones, should give countenance and courage
94 To trim Duke Perkin; you will all confess

Our bounties have unthriftily been scattered
96 Amongst unthankful men.

98 **Dawb.** Unthankful beasts,
Dogs, villains, traitors!

100 **K. Hen.** Dawbney, let the guilty
102 Keep silence; I accuse none, though I know
Foreign attempts against a state and kingdom
104 Are seldom without some great friends at home.

106 **Stan.** Sir, if no other abler reasons else
Of duty or allegiance could divert
108 A headstrong resolution, yet the dangers

So lately passed by men of blood and fortunes
110 In Lambert Simnel's party must command
More than a fear, a terror to conspiracy.

112 The high-born Lincoln, son to De la Pole;

The Earl of Kildare, the Lord Geraldine;

the deferential **you**. Here, however, Henry may be using **your** in the older plural sense, addressing all of his attending nobles.

91: against all attacks on the crown and secret plots of invasion.^{5,6}

= suppose.¹

= support or good will.¹

= prepare, equip, or ornament,¹ but Pickburn⁵ reads **trim** as an adjective, meaning "pretty", and used ironically.

95-96: Henry is bitter that so many of those he has shown favour to, with offices and titles, have turned against him.

103-4: Henry sensibly expects at least some of his advisors or other high-ranked Englishmen **at home** are actually working on behalf of his enemies abroad.

106-111: "even if **duty or allegiance** cannot keep these men loyal to you, they should at least be kept in check by the memory of what happened to those conspirators who supported Lambert Simnel" – many of whom were executed.

= experienced.⁶ = high rank.⁶

= faction.

112-5 (below): Stanley lists some of the men who joined the Simnel conspiracy, leading the Yorkist army that was defeated by Henry at the Battle of Stokes Field (16 June 1487), the final major engagement between Yorkists and Lancastrians; Ford adopted the list of conspirators killed at Stokes Field exactly from Gainsford:

112: **John De La Pole, Earl of Lincoln** (1464?-1487). *His mother was Elizabeth, a sister of Richard III. When Richard's only legitimate son died in 1484 at the age of ten, Richard selected his nephew Lincoln to be his heir, over the Earl of Warwick (son of Richard's brother Clarence), who, though having perhaps a superior claim, was still only a boy. Richard was very generous to Lincoln, who fought with him at Bosworth. Although appointed offices by Henry VII, Lincoln remained ambitious for the crown, and fled to Ireland to support the plot in support of the Pretender Lambert Simnel.*

113: the reference is to **Thomas Lord Geraldine**, who was actually the brother of the eighth Earl of Kildare, Gerald

114 Francis Lord Lovell; and the German baron

Bold Martin Swart, with Broughton and the rest, –

116 Most spectacles of ruin, some of mercy, –
Are precedents sufficient to forewarn
118 The present times, or any that live in them,
What folly, nay, what madness, 'twere to lift
120 A finger up in all defence but yours,
Which can be but imposturous in a title.

122 **K. Hen.** Stanley, we know thou lov'st us, and thy heart
124 Is figured on thy tongue; nor think we less

Of any's here. – How closely we have hunted

126 This cub, since he unlodged, from hole to hole,

Your knowledge is our chronicle: first Ireland,

128 The common stage of novelty, presented

130 This gewgaw to oppose us; there the Geraldines
And Butlers once again stood in support

Fitzgerald. Thomas died at Stokes Field.

Ford has conflated Thomas with his brother the Earl, causing no little confusion for later editors.

114: **Francis Lovell, Viscount** (1454-1487?). A supporter of Richard III, Lovell fought at Bosworth. Though Gainsford tells us that Lovell's body was found on the battlefield at Stokes Field, the Viscount actually survived the slaughter and escaped, but then disappeared from history, perhaps dying of starvation while hiding in a vault in his house. In 1708 a skeleton was found in the vault during a renovation, which quickly crumbled to dust at first contact with fresh air.

115: **Martin Schwartz** (d. 1487). Captain of 1500 mercenaries sent by Margaret of Burgundy to support Simnel.

Broughton was one Sir Thomas Broughton.

116: ie. some of the rebels were executed, some pardoned.

119-121: a man would have to be crazy to support any cause against Henry, such cause being necessarily fraudulent (**imposturous**) in nature.^{1,5,6}

119: **'twere** = ie. it would be.

119-120: **lift A finger** = a variation on the earlier expressions "move a finger" and "stir a finger", the still-current phrase **lift a finger** seems to have been coined in the early 17th century, appearing in print for the first time in 1617's *A Fair Quarrel*, a play by Thomas Middleton and William Rowley.

123-4: **thy heart...tongue** = "what you feel is expressed by what you say."

= ie. "anybody who is".

126-142: in this speech, Henry reviews Warbeck's travels. Note the nice hunting metaphor of lines 125-6.

unlodged = left home.¹

hole = den.¹

127: **Your knowledge...chronicle** = ie. "you all know the story;" **chronicle** = history.

first Ireland = Warbeck had first landed in Cork, Ireland, in 1491, where the conspiracy took shape.

= a reference to Ireland as being a location from which pretenders were known to spring: both Lambert Simnel and Warbeck found early support in Ireland.

129: **gewgaw** = toy or trifle, a thing of no value or account.¹

129-131: **there the...statue** = a detail from Gainsford, who wrote that Warbeck "*insinuated with the houses of Geraldines and Butlers*" (p. 34).

colossic (line 131) = colossal; **colossic** seems to have been the more commonly-used adjective in the 16th and 17th centuries.

132 Of this colossic statue: Charles of France
Thence called him into his protectiön,
134 Dissembled him the lawful heir of England;
Yet this was all but French dissimulation,
136 Aiming at peace with us; which being granted
On honourable terms on our part, suddenly

This smoke of straw was packed from France again,

138 T' infect some grosser air: and now we learn –

140 Maugre the malice of the bastard Nevill,
Sir Taylor, and a hundred English rebels –

142 They're all retired to Flanders, to the dam
That nursed this eager whelp, Margaret of Burgundy.

144 But we will hunt him there too; we will hunt him.
Hunt him to death, even in the beldam's closet,

Though the archduke were his buckler!

146 *Sur.* She has styled him
148 "The fair white rose of England."

150 *Dawb.* Jolly gentleman!
More fit to be a swabber to the Flemish
152 After a drunken surfeit.

131-7: *Charles...France again* = in October 1492 (the same month Christopher Columbus first sighted land in the Western Hemisphere), Warbeck arrived in France at the invitation of Charles VIII of France, who was anticipating war with England (Gainsford tells us that Charles actually intended to place Warbeck at the front of the French army which was to attack Henry). Henry did in fact invade, and besieged Boulogne; Charles, however, made a quick peace with Henry (the Treaty of Étapes), and expelled Warbeck from France.

Dissembled him = pretended Warbeck was.¹

137: *This smoke of straw* = ie. Warbeck, described as something incorporeal and insubstantial.

packed = dismissed.¹
= denser, thicker.¹

139: *Maugre* = notwithstanding.¹

139-140: *the bastard...Taylor* = ie. Sir Thomas Neville, illegitimate son of Sir Thomas Neville, and Sir John Taylor, both of whom supported Warbeck in France;⁹ Thomas Neville was frequently referred to in the period's literature as *bastard*.

141: *Flanders* = from France, Warbeck returned to Flanders, where Margaret received him as her nephew. There they were joined by many disaffected Yorkists.

dam = mother (contemptuous), but with *whelp* (line 142), also meaning an animal's mother.¹

144: *beldam's* = ie. Margaret's; a *beldam* is an aged woman, but the term was also used in a depreciatory sense, to refer to a loathsome old hag.¹

closet = private rooms.

145: "even if he were defended by the archduke Philip, Lord of the Netherlands."

The editors have generally been confused as to whether Ford's *archduke* refers to Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, or his son Philip, who ruled the Netherlands 1482-1506.

According to the various histories, Henry had sent ambassadors to Philip to ask him to expel Warbeck from Burgundy, where the latter was living under the direct protection of Margaret of Burgundy. Philip's advisors, however, speaking for the archduke (who was still a minor at this time), declined to expel the Pretender, politely explaining that they had no jurisdiction over Margaret in her own domain – an excuse Henry did not believe.

buckler = small, round shield,² hence "protector".⁵

= named, called. = ie. Warbeck.

148: the *white rose* was the symbol of the Yorkists in the War of the Roses; the red was that of the Lancastrians.

= sailor charged with cleaning a ship's deck.¹

= ie. a bout of over-drinking; the *Flemish* here are conflated with the Dutch, who were stereotyped heavy drinkers.

154	<i>Enter <u>Urswick</u> with a paper.</i>	154: Christopher Urswick (1448-1522). In 1482, the Earl of Richmond's (ie. our Henry's) mother, Margaret Beaufort, took Urswick, a young cleric, to be her chaplain and confessor. Urswick thereafter became part of Henry's scheme to revolt against Richard III, and he accompanied Henry in his invasion of England and victory over Richard at Bosworth (1485). Urswick was rewarded with a steady stream of ecclesiastic positions, which he continued to accumulate throughout his long life. Urswick outlived Henry, dying in 1522 at the ripe old age of 74.
156	Urs. Gracious sovereign, Please you peruse this paper.	
158	[<i>The King reads.</i>]	
160	B. of Dur. The king's countenance	
162	Gathers a sprightly blood.	
164	Dawb. Good news; believe it.	
166	K. Hen. Urswick, <u>thine ear</u> . <u>Th'ast lodged him?</u>	166: thine ear = ie. "listen up." Th'ast lodged him? = "you have given him temporary quarters?" Th'ast = "thou hast".
168	Urs. <u>Strongly safe</u> , sir.	= ie. securely stowed away.
170	K. Hen. Enough: – is <u>Barley</u> come too?	170: by now, the lords realize Henry has something up his sleeve. We will postpone explaining Henry's plan, and the identity of Barley , until Scene III, to preserve some suspense for the reader.
172	Urs. No, my lord.	
174	K. Hen. No matter – <u>phew!</u> he's but a running weed, At pleasure to be plucked up by the roots: 176 But more of this <u>anon</u> . – I have bethought me, My lords, for reasons which you shall <u>pertake</u> ,	= the earliest appearance of phew as an interjection was in John Marston's 1604 play, <i>The Malcontent</i> . = in a little while. = ie. partake, a common alternate form.
178	It is our pleasure to remove our court From Westminster to <u>th' Tower</u> : we will lodge	178-9: It is our...Tower = Henry has a secret reason to move his court (which includes himself and his immediate retinue) to the Tower of London , which, in addition to serving as a prison, had apartments for the king and his guests.
180	This very night there; – [<i>To Stanley</i>] give, <u>Lord Chamberlain</u> , <u>A present</u> order for 't.	180-1: the Lord Chamberlain was the chief officer of the royal household; ¹ William Stanley had held the position since Henry's ascension in 1485. A present = an immediate.
182	Stan. [<i>Aside</i>] The Tower! – I shall, sir.	
184	K. Hen. Come, my true, best, fast friends: these clouds will vanish,	183: note that the <i>long dash</i> can be used to indicate a change of addressee, as in line 180 above, or, as here, a switch between an aside and a line spoken to another character.
186	The sun will shine at full; the heavens are clearing.	

ACT I, SCENE II.*Edinburgh.**An Apartment in the Earl of Huntley's House.**Enter Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell.***Scene II:** the scene switches to Scotland; the play will regularly alternate between the English and Scottish characters.**Entering Characters:** the **Earl of Huntley** and **Lord Dalyell** are Scottish nobles. Huntley is an older man, whose grown daughter Katherine Dalyell hopes to marry. A generous man full of good humour, Huntley is very fond of Dalyell; Dalyell, in contrast, is a deadly serious, but completely honourable, fellow. We join the men in mid-conversation.

*Though **Huntley** calls himself "Alexander" later in this play, the Huntley portrayed here is actually **George Gordon, second Earl of Huntly** (d. 1524) (Ford had adopted the erroneous name Alexander from Gainsford's History). On the occasion of the rebellion against James III in 1488, Huntly ostensibly was on the side of the king, but may have been actually helping the king's son, afterwards James IV, as evidenced by his being named to the privy council immediately upon young James' ascension to the crown of Scotland.*

Huntly had married James I's daughter Annabella in 1459, but in 1471 the marriage was annulled, as Annabella had been related too closely in blood to Huntly's first wife. Among his children was Lady Katherine, who though portrayed here as the daughter of Annabella, and thus of royal blood, she may actually have been the daughter of Huntly's third and last wife.

***Lord Dalyell** is, dramatically speaking, a fictional character; he could, however, as Dyce¹¹ points out, be either **William** or **Robert Dalzell**, grandsons of Sir John Dalzell; of the former, nothing is known; Robert was killed in a skirmish in 1508.¹¹*

1 **Hunt.** You trifle time, sir.

2

3 **Daly.** O, my noble lord,
4 You conster my griefs to so hard a sense,
5 That where the text is argument of pity,
6 Matter of earnest love, your gloss corrupts it
7 With too much ill-placed mirth.

8

9 **Hunt.** Much mirth, Lord Dalyell?
10 Not so, I vow. Observe me, sprightly gallant.
11 I know thou art a noble lad, a handsome,
12 Descended from an honourable ancestry,
13 Forward and active, dost resolve to wrestle
14 And ruffle in the world by noble actions

= waste.

4-7: ie. "you are so callous (**hard**) in the way you construe (**conster**) my suffering, that when you should be feeling pity for me, this being a matter of love, you instead treat it as if it were a source of humour."There is a brief "printing" metaphor here, as lines 5-6 literally mean, "that where the theme (**argument**)¹ of the text is pity, the subject matter being love, your interpretation (**gloss**) erroneously infuses it".= **Dalyell** should be pronounced as a disyllable: **DAL**-yell.

= ie. handsome lad.

13: **forward** = eager, enthusiastic.13-15: **dost resolve...posterity** = "you are determined to

	For a <u>brave</u> mention to posterity:	make your mark in the world by performing noble deeds (<i>actions</i>) which you hope history will record for future generations to read about." <i>ruffle</i> = contend. ¹ <i>brave</i> = illustrious. ⁵
16	I scorn not <u>thy</u> affection to my daughter,	= note that while Dalyell, in speaking to the elder Huntley, addresses him with the respectful and deferential <i>you</i> , Huntley, in speaking to the younger Dalyell, appropriately uses <i>thee</i> ; but <i>thee</i> also signifies his great affection for the young man.
	Not I, by good <u>Saint Andrew</u> ; <u>but</u> this <u>bugbear</u> ,	17: <i>Saint Andrew</i> = Scotland's patron saint. Huntley regularly swears by him. <i>but</i> = ie. "but instead I scorn". <i>bugbear</i> = bogeyman. ²
	18 This <u>whoreson</u> tale of honour, – honour, Dalyell! – So hourly chats and tattles in mine ear 20 The piece of royalty that is stitched-up In my Kate's blood, that 'tis as dangerous	18-24 (below): Huntley's wife, Annabella, was the daughter of the Scottish King James I; since their daughter Katherine is of royal blood, she would be expected to avoid marrying beneath her social level, as a point of honour. Huntley is saddened by this unwritten rule, as he genuinely would be glad to have her marry the noble, but not royal, Dalyell. 18-23: <i>Honour</i> is personified as continually reminding Huntley of Katherine's descent from royalty, causing him to hesitate in letting Dalyell marry Katherine. <i>whoreson</i> = early version of "SOB".
22	For thee, young lord, <u>to perch so near an eaglet</u> As foolish for my <u>gravity</u> to <u>admit</u> it:	= metaphorically, to marry into the royal family. = sense of dignity. ⁵ = allow.
24	I have spoke all at once.	24: "there, I said what had to be said"; Huntley cannot, without harming his reputation and family honour, openly acknowledge his desire to have Dalyell become his son-in-law, due to the discrepancy in rank between his own family and Dalyell's.
26	<i>Daly.</i> Sir, with this truth You mix such <u>wormwood</u> , that you leave no hope	= a plant used in medicine, known for its bitter taste; hence, used to refer to anything that is bitter.
28	For my <u>disordered</u> palate e'er to relish A wholesome taste again: alas, I know, sir,	28-29: <i>For my...again</i> = using an interesting dining metaphor, Dalyell claims he can never be happy again if he cannot wed Katherine. <i>disordered</i> = confused, irregular. ¹
30	What an unequal distance lies between Great Huntley's daughter's birth and Dalyell's fortunes;	
32	She's the king's kinswoman, placed near the crown, A princess of the blood, and I a subject.	
34	<i>Hunt.</i> Right; but a noble subject; <u>put in that too</u> .	= "don't leave that out."
36		37-44 (below): <i>I could add...originals</i> = Dalyell tries to link himself to the royal family, but, as he admits in lines 42-44, his connection is clearly tenuous at best. Dalyell is descended from one <i>Adam Mure</i> , a knight whose daughter <i>Elizabeth</i> married <i>Robert</i> , High Steward of Scotland; Robert became King Robert II of Scotland in

38 **Daly.** I could add more; and in the rightest line
 Derive my pedigree from Adam Mure,
 A Scottish knight; whose daughter was the mother
 40 To him who first begot the race of Jameses,
 That sway the sceptre to this very day.
 42 But kindreds are not ours when once the date
 Of many years have swallowed up the memory

44 Of their originals; so pasture-fields
 Neighbouring too near the ocean are sooped-up,

46 And known no more; for stood I in my first
 And native greatness, if my princely mistress

48 Vouchsafed me not her servant, 'twere as good
 I were reduced to clownery, to nothing,
 50 As to a throne of wonder.

52 **Hunt.** [*Aside*] Now, by Saint Andrew,
 A spark of mettle! 'a has a brave fire in him:

54 I would 'a had my daughter, so I knew't not.

But must not be so, must not. – Well, young lord,
 56 This will not do yet: if the girl be headstrong,
 And will not hearken to good counsel, steal her,
 58 And run away with her; dance galliards, do,
 And frisk about the world to learn the languages:
 60 'Twill be a thriving trade; you may set up by't.

62 **Daly.** With pardon, noble Gordon, this disdain
 Suits not your daughter's virtue or my constancy.

64 **Hunt.** You're angry. –

66 [*Aside*] Would he would beat me, I deserve it. –

Dalyell, thy hand; w'are friends: follow thy courtship,
 68 Take thine own time and speak; if thou prevail'st

1370. Robert and Elizabeth's son, born in 1337, was **Robert III**, and his son in turn was **James I**, who reigned 1406-1437.¹⁷

= most direct.⁵

= ie. Robert III of Scotland.

42-44: **But kindreds...originals** = one's kinship to royalty may as well not exist if no one remembers who one's far-removed connecting ancestor is.

= just as.
 = swept up,¹ hence "engulfed".

46-48: **for stood...servant** = "if my rank were as high now as it once could have been, and still Katherine refused to acknowledge me as her suitor and admirer (*servant*)."

48-50: **'twere...clownery** = "I would have been no worse off if my rank were reduced to that of *peasant*, than if I had been advanced to a height of glory" (Pickburn, p. 105).⁵

53: **A spark of mettle** = "a spirited fellow",⁵ with pun on *metal*.

'a = he; Ford frequently uses 'a for *he* throughout the play.
a brave = an excellent.

54: Huntley toys with the pleasing idea that Dalyell marry his daughter, so long as it is done without his knowledge. Note how Huntley quickly rejects the notion, then immediately suggests to Dalyell that he elope with Katherine, so long as they leave Scotland!

= listen. = ie. Huntley's advice not to marry beneath her.
 = lively dances.¹

= begin housekeeping.¹

62-63: Dalyell, like Katherine (as we shall see), has no sense of humour. They are oddly stuffy characters, both emotionally bound up in the pursuit of honourable behavior.

= Huntley briefly switches to the more formal **you**, suggesting a momentary break in the intimate connection with Dalyell.

= "I wish he would"; Huntley feels bad for speaking so flippantly about Dalyell's pursuit of Katherine. The elder man is easily one of the most genial and likeable characters in the entire canon.

67-71: **follow thy...allowed** = if Dalyell can convince Katherine to marry him, even in the face of Huntley's formal, but

70 With passion more than I can with my counsel,
 She's thine; nay, she is thine: 'tis a fair match,
 Free and allowed. I'll only use my tongue,
 72 Without a father's power; use thou thine:

74 Self do, self have: no more words; win and wear her.

76 **Daly.** You bless me: I am now too poor in thanks
 To pay the debt I owe you.

78 **Hunt.** Nay, th'art poor
 Enough. – [*Aside*] I love his spirit infinitely. –
 80 Look ye, she comes: to her now, to her, to her!

82 *Enter Lady Katherine and Jane.*

84 **Kath.** [*To Huntley*] The king commands your presence,
 sir.

86 **Hunt.** The gallant –
 This, this, this lord, this servant, Kate, of yours,
 88 Desires to be your master.

90 **Kath.** I acknowledge him
 A worthy friend of mine.

92 **Daly.** Your humblest creature.

94 **Hunt.** [*Aside*] So, so! the game's a-foot; I'm in cold
 hunting;
 96 The hare and hounds are parties.

98 **Daly.** Princely lady,
 How most unworthy I am to employ
 100 My services in honour of your virtues,

not too strenuous, opposition, Huntley will be satisfied.

71-72: *I'll only...thine* = Huntley's plan is that he will discourage Katherine from marrying Dalyell, but he won't force his will on her; it will be up to Dalyell to talk her into marrying him.

73: Huntley, perhaps out of words of advice, concludes his speech with a string of well-worn but rather weak proverbs.

78-79: *Nay...Enough* = Huntley notes that Dalyell's poverty is another strike against his candidacy to become his son-in-law.

Entering Characters: we meet **Katherine**, the subject of the preceding conversation between Huntley and Dalyell. Gibson⁶ identifies Katherine's attendant, **Jane**, as Jane Douglas, the daughter of Archibald Douglas, fifth Earl of Angus.

86-88: Huntley so adores Dalyell that he seems barely able to speak coherently.
 = **servant** was a complex and subtle word; for a man to let a woman know he is her **servant** could express his desire to be her follower, devotee, wooer or lover.

= Huntley's use of **you** to address Katherine indicates a formal and ritualistic moment: a father introducing a suitor to his daughter.

= another loaded word: **friend** could mean well-wisher, suitor, or lover; she may deliberately be ambiguous.

= admirer.

95-96: with a brilliant hunting metaphor, Huntley, who thought he was introducing Dalyell to Katherine, is hit with the realization that the young man has already begun to court his daughter!

the game's a-foot = the prey is on the move; meaning, the process has already begun.

cold hunting = literally, the hunter does not have the scent; meaning that Huntley has been on the wrong track.¹

96: **The hare...parties** = the **hare** (Katherine as the pursued, or prey) and **hounds** (Dalyell as the pursuer, or hunter) are in league (they are **parties**).¹

98-105: note how awkward and stilted Dalyell's wooing is.

= Dalyell's use of **your** to address Katherine suggests:
 (1) his deliberate formality when speaking to her in front of her father; and
 (2) their relationship has not yet reached a more intimate stage.

<p>102 How hopeless my desires are to enjoy Your fair opinion, and much more your love, – Are only matter of despair, unless</p>	
<p>104 Your goodness give large warrant to my boldness, My feeble-winged ambition.</p>	<p>103-5: Dalyell claims to despair unless Katherine gives him some signal of her approval of his courtship. 104: "your generous spirit permits me to be more aggressive." 105: Dalyell acknowledges the weakness of his position.</p>
<p>106 Hunt. [<i>Aside</i>] This is scurvy.</p>	<p>107: Huntley is annoyed that Dalyell is not more forceful in his pursuit.</p>
<p>108 Kath. My lord, I interrupt you not.</p>	
<p>110</p>	
<p>112 Hunt. [<i>Aside</i>] Indeed! Now, on my life, <u>she'll court him</u>. – Nay, nay, on, sir.</p>	<p>= "she will likely be more aggressive than he will!"</p>
<p>114 Daly. Oft have I tuned the <u>lesson</u> of my sorrows</p>	<p>= ie. music lesson;⁶ a musical metaphor with tuned and discord.</p>
<p>To sweeten discord and <u>enrich your pity</u>;</p>	<p>115: sweeten discord = "mitigate our differences". enrich your pity = ie. "augment the mercy you show towards me": pity was often used to describe the sympathy a pursued but unresponsive man or woman should feel for his or her agonized wooer.</p>
<p>116 But all in vain: here had my comforts sunk, And never <u>ris'n</u> again to tell a story 118 Of the despairing lover, had not now, Even now, the earl your father –</p>	<p>116-8: here had...lover = ie. Dalyell would have given up. = ie. "risen": printed in the quarto as shown to indicate it should be pronounced as a single syllable.</p>
<p>120 Hunt. [<i>Aside</i>] He means me, sure.</p>	
<p>122 Daly. After some <u>fit disputes of your condition</u>,</p>	<p>= "appropriate debate regarding your rank".</p>
<p>124 <u>Your highness and my lowness</u>, giv'n a license Which did not more embolden than encourage 126 My faulting tongue.</p>	<p>124: Your highness...lowness = ie. "the difference in our ranks".</p>
<p>128 Hunt. How, how? how's that? "embolden!"</p>	<p>124-6: giv'n...tongue = "granted me permission, which gave me courage, if not confidence, to approach you, speaking as poorly as I do."</p>
<p>"Encourage!" I "encourage" ye! <u>d'ee</u> hear, sir? –</p>	<p>128f: Huntley is annoyed that Dalyell has revealed his encouragement to Katherine, when it was supposed to be kept secret between them.</p>
<p>130 <u>A subtle trick, a quaint one</u>: – will you hear, man?</p>	<p>129: ie. "What! I said that?!? Do ye (d'ee) hear?" Ford will frequently and indiscriminately use ye for you, and even 'ee for ye!</p>
<p>What did I say to you? come, come, <u>toth</u> point.</p>	<p>= subtle and quaint are synonyms for "crafty" or "cunning".¹ = ie. "to the", a monosyllabic contraction.</p>
<p>132 Kath. <u>It shall not need</u>, my lord.</p>	<p>= "this is not necessary".</p>
<p>134 Hunt. Then hear me, Kate. –</p>	<p>135ff: Huntley decides to take over the conversation.</p>

136 Keep you on that hand of her, I on this. –
 [To Katherine] Thou stand'st between a father and a
 suitor,
 138 Both striving for an interest in thy heart:
 He courts thee for affection, I for duty;

140 He as a servant pleads, but by the privilege
 Of nature though I might command, my care

142 Shall only counsel what it shall not force.
 Thou canst but make one choice; the ties of marriage
 144 Are tenures not at will, but during life.

146 Consider whose thou art, and who; a princess,
 A princess of the royal blood of Scotland,
 In the full spring of youth and fresh in beauty.

148 The king that sits upon the throne is young,
 And yet unmarried, forward in attempts
 150 On any least occasion to endanger
 His person: wherefore, Kate, as I am confident
 152 Thou dar'st not wrong thy birth and education
 By yielding to a common servile rage
 154 Of female wantonness, so I am confident

156 Thou wilt proportion all thy thoughts to side
 Thy equals, if not equal thy superiors.

158 My Lord of Dalyell, young in years, is old
 In honours, but nor eminent in titles
 Or in estate, that may support or add to

160 The expectation of thy fortunes. Settle
 Thy will and reason by a strength of judgment;

162 For, in a word, I give thee freedom; take it.
 If equal Fates have not ordained to pitch
 164 Thy hopes above my height, let not thy passion
 Lead thee to shrink mine honour in oblivion:

166 Thou art thine own; I have done.

168 **Daly.** O, y'are all oracle,
 The living stock and root of truth and wisdom!

136: Huntley asks Katherine to stand between him and
 Dalyell
 = Huntley switches to the natural and intimate *thee* that he
 would normally use with his daughter.

= out of.

140: *servant* = lover, courter.
 140-1: *the privilege...command* = ie. the right, as her
 father, Huntley possesses to make Katherine's decisions
 for her.

144: Huntley employs a pair of legal terms for holding
 property; the real estate metaphor instructs Katherine that
 marriage is for life, and cannot be broken *at will*.
tenures = *tenure* is the holding or possessing of real
 property.¹

145-166: Huntley's entire speech is wonderfully endearing:
 by warning Katherine not to marry below her station, he
 preserves his honour; but he also, multiple times, subtly lets
 her know that she is free to do as she pleases, thus giving her
 a chance to fulfill his desire that she marry Dalyell.

148-151: *The king...person* = ie. James, the Scottish bach-
 elor king, is, because of his youth, too eager (*forward*) to
 engage in reckless behaviour which could cost him his life.

153-4: *By yielding...wantonness* = by giving in to an out-
 burst (*rage*) of female foolishness (*wantonness*),¹ something
 which is to be expected only of those of lesser rank, or even
 slaves (hence, *common servile*).¹

= fashion, balance.¹ = ie. match (in rank).¹
 = ie. "only someone at or above your rank."

158-160: *but nor...fortunes* = Dalyell has neither titles nor
 wealth (*estate*) enough to give him the success in life which
 Katherine should expect from a prospective husband.

160-6: *Settle...thine own* = Huntley hilariously swings
 rapidly back and forth between his opposing pieces of
 advice: "marry to your station, but do as you wish"!

163-5: "if the just (*equal*) Fates have not pre-determined to
 raise your expectations in a husband to one above my rank,
 (*height*) do not dishonour me by following your desires."
pitch (line 163) = fix or plant.¹

= ie. "you are authorized to decide things for yourself."

168-169: ie. "you speak the truth!" This is not meant to be
 sarcastic; Dalyell is too serious and honourable to be so.

<p>170</p> <p>172</p> <p>174</p> <p>176</p> <p>178</p> <p>180</p> <p>182</p> <p>184</p> <p>186</p> <p>188</p> <p>190</p> <p>192</p> <p>194</p> <p>196</p> <p>198</p> <p>200</p> <p>202</p> <p>204</p> <p>206</p>	<p>Kath. My worthiest lord and father, the indulgence Of your sweet <u>composition</u> thus commands The <u>lowest of obedience</u>; you have granted</p> <p>A liberty so large, that I <u>want</u> skill To choose without direction of <u>example</u>: From which I daily learn, by how much more You take off from the roughness of a father, By so much more I am engaged to <u>tender</u> The duty of a daughter. For <u>respects</u> Of birth, degrees of title, and advancement, I <u>nor</u> admire nor <u>slight</u> them; all my studies Shall ever aim at this perfection only, To live and die so, that you may not <u>blush</u> In any course of mine to <u>own</u> me yours.</p> <p>Hunt. Kate, Kate, thou grow'st upon my heart like peace, Creating every other hour a <u>jubilee</u>.</p> <p>Kath. To you, my lord of Dalyell, I address Some few remaining words: the general fame That speaks your merit, even in <u>vulgar tongues</u>,</p> <p>Proclaims it clear; <u>but in the best</u>, a precedent.</p> <p>Hunt. Good <u>wench</u>, good girl, <u>y' faith!</u></p> <p>Kath. For my part, trust me, I value mine own worth at higher rate Cause you are pleased to prize it: if the <u>stream</u> Of your <u>protested</u> service – as you <u>term</u> it – Run in a constancy more than a <u>compliment</u>,</p> <p>It shall be my delight that worthy love Leads you to worthy actions, and these guide ye Richly to wed an honourable name:</p> <p>So every virtuous praise in after-ages</p> <p>Shall be your heir, and I in your brave mention Be chronicled the <u>mother</u> of that <u>issue</u>,</p>	<p><i>stock and root</i> = ie. source, fountainhead; an arboreal metaphor: <i>stock</i> = trunk of a tree.¹</p> <p>171-3: <i>the indulgence...obedience</i> = Huntley's desire to gratify Katherine, a natural feature of his personality, compels her to comply with his every wish.^{1,5,9}</p> <p><i>composition</i> = Pickburn notes that <i>composition</i> could mean "words", referring to Huntley's previous speech.</p> <p><i>lowest of obedience</i> = suggests an image of the deepest of bows or curtsies, as a sign of maximum respect.</p> <p>= lack. = precedent.</p> <p>= offer. = considerations.⁶</p> <p>= neither. = disdain.¹</p> <p>= ie. <i>blush</i> from having embarrassed her father. = owe.</p> <p>186-7: the effect of Huntley's previous speech has been to cause Katherine, in her gratitude, to promise never to do anything to shame him; though in rejecting Huntley's tacit permission to marry Dalyell she goes against what Huntley really wants, he cannot help but be proud of her.</p> <p><i>jubilee</i> = occasion for rejoicing.¹</p> <p>190-2: <i>the general...clear</i> = ie. Dalyell's fine reputation, spoken about by even the ordinary citizenry (<i>vulgar tongues</i>), confirms his claim to excellence.</p> <p>= "but for the highest-rank people (<i>the best</i>), you are an example to follow."</p> <p>= lass. = ie. "ye faith", meaning "truly"; an occasionally-appearing alternate form of <i>in faith</i>.</p> <p>198-200: <i>if the...compliment</i> = "if Dalyell's professed (<i>protested</i>) dedication to Katherine is unwavering, and not just mere show or ceremony (<i>compliment</i>)".² Note the metaphor of <i>stream</i> with <i>run</i>.</p> <p><i>term</i> = call.</p> <p>201-3: like a maiden in an ancient tale of chivalry, Katherine hopes that Dalyell's love for her will inspire him to commit great and noble deeds, by which he will gain great honour.</p> <p>204-5: <i>So every...heir</i> = ie. so that Dalyell will be remembered as a heroic figure in times to come.</p> <p>205-6: <i>and I...issue</i> = and Katherine will be recalled as the one who inspired him to perform those deeds which will be</p>
--	---	---

That glorious issue.

208

210 **Hunt.** O, that I were young again!
She'd make me court proud danger, and suck spirit
From reputation.

212

Kath. To the present motion

214 Here's all that I dare answer: when a ripeness
Of more experience, and some use of time,
216 Resolves to treat the freedom of my youth

Upon exchange of troths, I shall desire
218 No surer credit of a match with virtue
Than such as lives in you: mean time my hopes are
220 Preserved secure in having you a friend.

222 **Daly.** You are a blessèd lady, and instruct
Ambition not to soar a farther flight
224 Than in the perfumed air of your soft voice. –

My noble Lord of Huntley, you have lent
226 A full extent of bounty to this parley;
And for it shall command your humblest servant.

228

230 **Hunt.** Enough: we are still friends, and will continue
A hearty love. – O, Kate, thou art mine own! –
No more: – my Lord of Crawford.

232

Enter Earl of Crawford.

234

236 **Craw.** From the king
I come, my Lord of Huntley, who in council
Requires your present aid.

238

240 **Hunt.** Some weighty business?

Craw. A secretary from a Duke of York,

recorded in the history books.
mother = ie. motivator.
issue = child, ie. outcome: metaphor with *mother*.

209-211: Huntley, elated, wishes he were in Dalyell's shoes: he would do anything for a woman like Katherine!
210-1: *suck...reputation* = draw power and motivation from the fame and honour (*reputation*) to be gained by serving her.

= proposal.

214-7: *when a...troths* = "when I am older or more mature and experienced, and Fate has decided it is time for me to exchange vows to marry (*exchange of troths*)".
treat = "bargain away"⁵ or "negotiate regarding".⁶

217-9: *I shall desire...in you* = "I will be satisfied if I can marry one whose virtue matches yours."

= the quarto prints either *Prefer'd* or *Preser'd* here – the *f* and *s* are often difficult to distinguish in the old font; editors universally interpret this as *Preserved*.

222-4: Dalyell accepts Katherine's admonition not to expect any more from her than the ecstasy of being able to speak to her.
Dalyell's emotions are mixed and complex: though he loves Katherine, he nonetheless admires the proper attitude she takes to his courtship; he is so serious and earnest that he would likely have been even more disappointed if she had been any more receptive and forward to him than she was.

225-7: Dalyell expresses gratitude for Huntley's generosity (*bounty*) in allowing him, Dalyell, to have this intimate conversation (*parley*) with his daughter.

Entering Character: John Lindsay, sixth Earl of Crawford (d. 1513). Lindsay had an elder brother, Alexander, whom he mortally wounded in a quarrel. John was killed at the Battle of Flodden.

235-7: Katherine, at line 84 above, had told Huntley of the king's desire to see him. One must not keep the sovereign waiting.

= important, serious.

241-5 (below): with hilarious irony, Crawford announces the arrival of a representative of Perkin Warbeck (*a Duke of York*), who is impersonating Prince Richard, the younger son of *Edward IV*.

242 The second son to the late English Edward,
Concealed, I know not where, these fourteen years,
244 Craves audience from our master; and 'tis said
The duke himself is following to the court.

246 **Hunt.** Duke upon duke; 'tis well, 'tis well; here's bustling

248 For majesty. – My lord, I will along with ye.

250 **Craw.** My service, noble lady!

252 **Kath.** Please ye walk, sir?

254 **Daly.** [*Aside*]
"Times have their changes; sorrow makes men wise;
256 The sun itself must set as well as rise;"
Then, why not I? – Fair madam, I wait on ye.

258

[*Exeunt.*]

ACT I, SCENE III.

London.

An Apartment in the Tower.

*Enter the Bishop of Durham, Sir Robert Clifford,
and Urswick. Lights.*

1 **B. of Dur.** You find, Sir Robert Clifford, how securely
2 King Henry, our great master, doth commit
His person to your loyalty; you taste
4 His bounty and his mercy even in this,

= ie. King James.

= will arrive soon after.

247-8: **bustling...majesty** = hustling to gain a crown.^{1,5}

= "I will go along with you." Note the common grammatical construction of this phrase: in the presence of a verb of intent (**will**), the verb of action (**go**) is omitted.

255-6: Dalyell, with sorrow, but also with an honourable willingness to assume the burden, accepts the eclipse of his hope to marry Katherine

255: **Times have their changes** = conditions change with time: proverbial.

255-6: quotation marks are used throughout the play to indicate the citing of some commonplace wisdom.

255-6: a rhyming couplet is used here, and frequently elsewhere in the play, to mark the end of the scene.

Scene III: late in Scene I, Henry had made what seemed to be a rather whimsical, and unexplained, decision to move with his retinue to the **Tower of London**. We now learn that his purpose in doing so was to interview one **Robert Clifford**, who was being held at the Tower.

Entering Characters: the **Bishop of Durham** (surnamed Fox) and Urswick, whom we met in the play's opening scene, are advisors and loyal followers of King Henry.

Robert Clifford was a Yorkist who had gone to Flanders to support Warbeck; Henry had sent spies to Flanders, who offered Clifford and William Barlow (the mysterious man mentioned by Henry in Scene I.170 above) pardons if they turned informers. Clifford immediately accepted. Barlow waited two years before submitting to Henry.

Lights = torches are either brought in or arranged on the stage to indicate that it is nighttime.

1-7 (below): the bishop reminds Clifford of the great favour Henry is showing him, and trust he is placing in him, by agreeing to meet with him privately.

= confidently.⁹

4: **bounty** = generosity.

even = like most two-syllable words with a medial *v*,

6 That at a time of night so late, a place
So private as his closet, he is pleased

8 T' admit you to his favour. Do not falter
In your discovery; but as you covet
A liberal grace, and pardon for your follies,
10 So labour to deserve it by laying open
All plots, all persons that contrive against it.

12 **Urs.** Remember not the witchcraft or the magic,
14 The charms and incantations, which the sorceress
Of Burgundy hath cast upon your reason:
16 Sir Robert, be your own friend now, discharge
Your conscience freely; all of such as love you
18 Stand sureties for your honesty and truth.
Take heed you do not dally with the king;
20 He's wise as he is gentle.

22 **Clif.** I am miserable,
If Henry be not merciful.

24 **Urs.** The king comes.

Enter King Henry.

28 **K. Hen.** Clifford!

30 **Clif.** [*Kneels*] Let my weak knees rot on the earth,
32 If I appear as leperous in my treacheries
Before your royal eyes, as to mine own
34 I seem a monster by my breach of truth.

36 **K. Hen.** Clifford, stand up; for instance of thy safety,
I offer thee my hand.

38 **Clif.** A sovereign balm
40 For my bruised soul, I kiss it with a greediness.

[*Kisses the King's hand, and rises.*]

44 Sir, you're a just master, but I –

even is usually pronounced as a one-syllable word for purposes of meter: *e'en*.

= private chamber.

7-11: **Do not...against it** = Durham advises Clifford to tell Henry everything he knows, without delay, if he wishes to receive a pardon from the king for his treachery in supporting the Pretender Warbeck.

discovery = revealing (the conspiracy).

liberal = generous.

deserve it = usually emended to **deserve 't** for purposes of meter.

laying open = disclosing.

contrive against it = "plot against the king's person" (Pickburn, p. 105).⁵

13-15: **the sorceress Of Burgundy** = Urswick portrays Margaret of Burgundy as a common witch.

= common sentiment for "do what is best for yourself".

= guarantees.

20: the sense is, "do not mistake appearances: though Henry is mild and merciful, he knows exactly what is going on", ie. he cannot be taken advantage of.

= will be.

= early editors emend **rot** to **root**.

= tainted, hence worthy of being shunned, because of.¹

= ie. "as to my own eyes".

= loyalty (to the king).

= evidence.¹

46-51 (below): Clifford had previously put on paper, which was submitted to the king ahead of their meeting, the details of the conspiracy, as a precondition to his receiving an audience – and hopefully a pardon! – from Henry.

<p>46</p> <p>48</p> <p>50</p> <p>52</p> <p>54</p> <p>56</p> <p>58</p> <p>60</p> <p>62</p> <p>64</p> <p>66</p>	<p>K. Hen. Tell me,</p> <p>Is every <u>circumstance</u> thou hast set down With thine own hand within this paper true? Is it a <u>sure intelligence</u> of all The progress of our enemies' intents Without <u>corruption</u>?</p> <p>Clif. True, as I wish <u>Heaven</u>, Or my <u>infected</u> honour <u>white</u> again.</p> <p>K. Hen. We know all, Clifford, fully, since this <u>meteor</u>,</p> <p>This <u>airy</u> apparition first <u>discradled</u></p> <p>From <u>Tournay</u> into <u>Portugal</u>, and <u>thence</u></p> <p>Advanced his fiery blaze for adoration <u>Toth superstitious Irish</u>; since the <u>beard</u></p> <p>Of this wild comet, <u>conjured into France</u>,</p> <p>Sparkled in <u>antic</u> flames in Charles his court; But shrunk again from thence, and, hid in darkness, Stole into Flanders <u>flourishing the rags</u></p> <p>Of <u>painted power</u> on the shore of Kent, Whence he was beaten back with shame and scorn, Contempt, and slaughter of <u>some naked outlaws</u>:</p>	<p>46: Henry, impatient to get to the heart of the matter, interrupts Clifford. = detail. = accurate information. = ie. veering from what is true. = ie. to go to Heaven. = corrupted, tainted. = to be free from evil, or morally pure.¹ = comet, ie. Warbeck; the <i>meteor</i> metaphor is developed extensively through line 63.</p> <p>57: <i>airy</i> = existing in the air; but also referring to an insubstantial person,¹ meaning Warbeck. <i>discradled</i> = emerged from his cradle, a metaphor for Warbeck leaving his home town. This Ford original is a great word, here making its only appearance in the old literature.¹</p> <p>58: <i>Tournay</i> = Warbeck's city of birth, located in Belgium. <i>Portugal</i> = Warbeck had spent a year in Portugal in the service of a one-eyed knight named Peter Vacz de Cogna in the 1480's. <i>thence</i> = from there.</p> <p>60: <i>Toth...Irish</i> = it was in Ireland where Warbeck was first publicly recognized as Richard, Duke of York; the Irish are <i>superstitious</i> because they have an irrational propensity to believe in fraudulent claimants, such as Simnel and Warbeck, to the English crown. <i>Toth</i> = ie. to the. <i>beard</i> = tail. = Charles VIII then invited Warbeck to visit as a guest of France, where the king entertained the Pretender royally, primarily as a way to annoy Henry. = grotesque or ludicrous.¹ = perhaps disparagingly referring to the standard¹ Warbeck would be waving or flying.</p> <p>65-67: with a band of followers, Warbeck landed at Kent, from which his small army was driven off. See the italicized note below. Lines 64-65 make no sense together, a line appearing to have been omitted by the early printer: line 164 perhaps was originally followed by a line whose sense was "then made for England, where he made a display, etc." Pickburn, however, suggests an easier fix: emend line 64's <i>into</i> to <i>out of</i>. <i>painted power</i> = counterfeit authority. <i>some naked outlaws</i> = reference to Warbeck's supporters of Irish, whom Bacon referred to as "a wild naked people."⁵</p> <p>65-67 (above): on 3 July 1495, Warbeck made his first direct attempt to enter England, arriving with a small army</p>
---	---	---

<p>68 But tell me what new course now shapes <u>Duke Perkin</u>?</p> <p>70 Clif. For Ireland, mighty Henry; so instructed By <u>Stephen Frion</u>, <u>sometimes</u> secretary</p> <p>72 In the French tongue unto your sacred excellence, But Perkin's tutor now.</p> <p>74</p> <p>76 K. Hen. A <u>subtle</u> villain, That Frion, Frion, – You, my Lord of Durham, Knew well the man.</p> <p>78 B. of Dur. French both in heart and actions.</p> <p>80</p> <p>82 K. Hen. Some Irish heads work in this mine of treason; Speak 'em.</p> <p>84 Clif. Not any of <u>the best</u>; your <u>fortune</u> <u>Hath dulled their spleens</u>. Never had <u>counterfeit</u></p> <p>86 Such a confused rabble of lost <u>bankrouts</u> For counsellors: first Heron, a <u>broken mercer</u>,</p> <p>88 Then <u>John a-Water</u>, <u>sometimes</u> Mayor of Cork, <u>Sketon</u> a tailor, and a <u>scrivener</u></p> <p>90 Called Astley: and whate'er <u>these list to treat of</u>,</p> <p>92 Perkin must <u>hearken</u> to; but Frion, cunning Above these dull capacities, still prompts him</p> <p>94 To fly to Scotland to young James the Fourth, And <u>sue</u> for aid to him: this is the latest Of all their resolutions.</p> <p>96 K. Hen. Still more Frion!</p>	<p><i>travelling on a number of "such ships as his friends (ie. supporters) had provided for him" (Hall, p. 37) off the shore at Deal. He sent some of his men on shore. Unfortunately for Warbeck, the loyal citizens of the region attacked his little band, slaying 150 of his men, and capturing 80 more. From here he sailed to Ireland again (as Clifford mentions in line 70 below), where he fruitlessly besieged the southern port of Waterford for 11 days, his fleet again attacked by loyal citizens. It was from here that Warbeck finally sailed to Scotland to be received by James IV in November 1495.</i></p> <p>= Warbeck will repeatedly be referred to sarcastically as duke by the English.</p> <p>71-73: Stephen Frion was indeed a former secretary of Henry's, but now, as an agent of Margaret's, serves Warbeck. sometimes = former.</p> <p>= crafty, shrewd.¹</p> <p>= typical Elizabethan disparagement of the French as treacherous.</p> <p>81-82: "there are some Irishmen who are supporting Warbeck: name them."</p> <p>= the highest ranking people.⁵ = success, good fortune.</p> <p>85: Hath dulled their spleens = "has subdued any spirit of rebellion that might be festering in their hearts." spleens = the spleen was believed to be the source of any of various emotions. counterfeit = a fraud.</p> <p>= bankrupts, a common alternate form. = bankrupt dealer in textiles.¹ = John Water or Walters, mayor of Cork in 1490 and 1494. sometimes = former.</p> <p>89: Sketon = Ford adopted the spelling of the tailor's name from Gainsford; Gibson, however, notes that all other historical sources print his name as <i>Skelton</i>, and other editors employ this spelling as well; we stick with Ford's choice. scrivener = professional writer or scribe.</p> <p>= ie. "these men want to talk about".</p> <p>91: hearken = listen. 91-92: cunning...capacities = Frion is more clever than these stupid others.</p> <p>= petition.</p>
---	---

98 Pestilent adder, he will hiss-out poison

As dangerous as infectious: we must match 'em. –

100 Clifford, thou hast spoke home; we give thee life:

102 But, Clifford, there are people of our own
Remain behind untold; who are they, Clifford?

104 Name those, and we are friends, and will to rest;
'Tis thy last task.

106 **Clif.** O, sir, here I must break
A most unlawful oath to keep a just one.

108 **K. Hen.** Well, well, be brief, be brief.

110 **Clif.** The first in rank
112 Shall be John Ratcliffe, Lord Fitzwater, then
Sir Simon Mountford and Sir Thomas Thwaites,

114 With William Dawbeney, Chessoner, Astwood,
Worseley the Dean of Paul's, two other friars,
116 And Robert Ratcliffe.

118 **K. Hen.** Churchmen are turned devils. –
These are the principal?

120 **Clif.** One more remains
122 Unnamed, whom I could willingly forget.

124 **K. Hen.** Ha, Clifford! one more?

126 **Clif.** Great sir, do not hear him;
For when Sir William Stanley, your lord chamberlain,
128 Shall come into the list, as he is chief,

130 I shall lose credit with ye; yet this lord
Last named is first against you.

98-99: **Pestilent...infectious** = Henry metaphorically worries that Frion will spread the rebellion, hence its being described as *infectious*.

99: **match** = meet with equal power or cunning.¹
'em = some editors emend 'em to *him*.

= spoken plainly and truly, ie. he has fulfilled his obligation to Henry.

101-2: **there are...untold** = ie. Clifford has not yet named any conspirators still living in England.

103-4: Henry means that, with the info Clifford has given to Henry so far, he has saved his own life, but no more; if he wants to return to Henry's favour, he will have to reveal the names of the enemy agents operating within England.

will to rest = ie. Henry will ask no more of Clifford.

106-7: Clifford has vowed never to reveal the conspirators in England, which oath conflicts with his promise to tell Henry everything he knows.

111-6: Clifford reveals the conspirators who are supporting Warbeck. *According to Bacon, the conspirators were immediately arrested; while some were executed, others were actually pardoned. The clerics all escaped punishment by virtue of their profession.*⁵

= not to be confused with Henry's supporter, Lord Giles Dawbney, who is a primary character in our play.

115: **Worseley** = ie. William Worsley (1435?-1499). The dean of St. Paul's was actually pardoned in 1495 for his role in the conspiracy.

Paul's = ie. St. Paul's church, later destroyed in the 1666 Great Fire of London.

118: Henry refers to Worseley and the friars.

126-130: Clifford recognizes that in revealing Henry's lord chamberlain **William Stanley** as leader (*chief*) of the traitors working in England, he risks not being believed by the king, who has such faith in his friend.

126-130: Sir William Stanley (*b. after 1435-1495*). *Sir William seemed to have had rebellion in his blood. He supported the Yorkists in 1459, when the Lancastrian Henry VI was on the throne. He was rewarded appropriately by Edward IV upon the latter's ascension to the throne in 1461. However, William was also a friend of Henry of Richmond, and when Richard III usurped the throne, William's loyalty to the new king was under suspicion. At the Battle of*

Bosworth (1485), William at the last moment brought in his men on the side of Henry, ensuring Henry's victory.

Though in the play the unsuspecting Henry is shocked to learn that Stanley is a traitor, the chamberlain's treachery was actually not a huge surprise to the king, who, knowing of the Stanleys' predilection for changing sides, always kept a close eye on him. The extent of William's involvement in the Pretender's plot is not known. The National Biography interestingly points out that the man who informed on William, Sir Robert Clifford, was the uncle of a lord "whose property at Skipton [William] had usurped."

132-3: Urswick is asked to bring a torch close to Henry's face.

= a contemptuous term of address.

= ie. "remove the moral taint (ie. deflect guilt) from themselves".

= ie. someone greater or of higher rank.

= ie. lying usually accompanies treason: Henry accuses Clifford of being untruthful to benefit himself.

= take back.

= ie. financial support. = ie. to be the.

156: Bacon tells us that Henry required Clifford to repeat "over again and again" his accusation of Stanley (p. 132).

= at the right or appropriate time.¹

164: the Lord Chamberlain had a large degree of control over access to the king and his chambers.

164-5: these lines provide another fascinating example of Ford's close borrowing from his sources: Gainsford quotes Henry as speaking of Stanley as possessing "*the charge and controlment of all that are next my person...and the very keys to our treasury*" (p. 52).

169: ie. to Margaret and Warbeck.

132 **K. Hen.** Urswick, the light! –
View well my face, sirs; is there blood left in it?
134
136 **B. of Dur.** You alter strangely, sir.
138 **K. Hen.** Alter, lord bishop?
Why, Clifford stabbed me, or I dreamed 'a stabbed me. –
[To Clifford] Sirrah, it is a custom with the guilty
140 To think they set their own stains oft by laying
Aspersions on some nobler than themselves;
142 Lies wait on treasons, as I find it here.
Thy life again is forfeit; I recall
144 My word of mercy, for I know thou dar'st
Repeat the name no more.
146
148 **Clif.** I dare, and once more,
Upon my knowledge, name Sir William Stanley
Both in his counsel and his purse the chief
150 Assistant to the feign[è]d Duke of York.
152 **B. of Dur.** Most strange!
154 **Urs.** Most wicked!
156 **K. Hen.** Yet again, once more.
158 **Clif.** Sir William Stanley is your secret enemy,
And, if time fit, will openly profess it.
160
162 **K. Hen.** Sir William Stanley! Who? Sir William Stanley!
My chamberlain, my counsellor, the love,
The pleasure of my court, my bosom-friend,
164 The charge and the controlment of my person,
The keys and secrets of my treasury,
166 The all of all I am! I am unhappy.
Misery of confidence, – let me turn traitor
168 To mine own person, yield my sceptre up
To Edward's sister and her bastard duke!

170	<i>B. of Dur.</i> You lose your <u>constant</u> temper.	
172		= steady; a running theme of Renaissance plays was that both rulers and those that affected to be members of the highest ranks of society were expected to suppress urges to act histrionically.
174	<i>K. Hen.</i> Sir William Stanley! – Oh, do not blame me; he, 'twas only he, Who, having rescued me in Bosworth-field	
176	From Richard's bloody sword, snatched from his head The kingly crown, and placed it first on mine.	
178	He never failed me: what have I deserved To lose this good man's heart, or he his own?	177: <i>actually it was William's brother Thomas who placed the crown on Henry's head after the Battle of Bosworth.</i>
180	<i>Urs.</i> The night doth <u>waste</u> ; <u>this passion ill becomes ye</u> ;	181: <i>waste</i> = ie. waste away. <i>this passion...ye</i> = Urswick also urges Henry to keep his emotions in check.
182	<u>Provide</u> against your danger.	= prepare.
184	<i>K. Hen.</i> Let it be so. Urswick, command <u>straight</u> Stanley to his chamber; –	185: Urswick is instructed to immediately (<i>straight</i>) order Stanley to go to his assigned room.
186	<u>'Tis well we are ith</u> Tower; – set a guard on him. – Clifford, to bed; you must lodge here to-night;	= Henry wryly comments on the serendipity of their being at the Tower, since he can conveniently have Stanley arrested and confined at the same time, with minimal fuss or uproar. <i>ith</i> = "in the".
188	We'll talk with you to-morrow. – My sad soul Divines strange troubles.	
190	<i>Dawb.</i> [<i>Within</i>] Ho! the king, the king!	= from offstage.
192	I must have entrance.	
194	<i>K. Hen.</i> Dawbney's voice; admit him. What new <u>combustions</u> <u>huddle</u> next, to keep	= tumults. ¹ = pile up. ¹
196	Our eyes from rest?	
198	<i>Enter Lord Dawbney.</i>	
200	The news?	
202	<i>Dawb.</i> Ten thousand Cornish, Grudging to pay your <u>subsidies</u> , have gathered	= special tax assessment.
204	<u>A head</u> ; led by a blacksmith and a lawyer, They make for London, and to them is joined	= an army.
206	Lord Audley: as they march, their number daily Increases; they are –	
208		

202-7 (below): The Cornish Rebellion of 1497: Ford toys with the timeline of events: in the late Spring of 1497, the Cornish revolted against the harsh taxes Henry had assessed them to pay for war with Scotland. The revolt was led by **Michael Joseph, a blacksmith; Thomas Flammock, a lawyer;** and one **Lord Audley**. Ford has this revolt occurring before the Scottish invasion of 1496, which is portrayed later in this play.

210 **K. Hen.** Rascals! – talk no more;
Such are not worthy of my thoughts to-night,
and if I cannot sleep, I'll wake. – To bed.

212 When counsels fail, and there's in man no trust,
214 Even then an arm from Heaven fights for the just.

[*Exeunt.*]

END OF ACT I.

211: some editors move *to bed* from the end of the line to its beginning.

212-3: even if Henry can trust no one, God will still lend his weight on the side of the righteous. Note how this scene ends, as did Scene I, with a rhyming couplet, which also serves to express a sententious bit of wisdom.

Heaven is usually pronounced as a one-syllable word for purposes of meter: *Hea'n*.

ACT II.

SCENE I.

Edinburgh.

The Presence-chamber in the Palace.

*Enter above the Countess of Crawford,
Lady Katherine, Jane, and other Ladies.*

1 **Countess of C.** Come, ladies, here's a solemn preparation
2 For entertainment of this English prince;
The king intends grace more than ordinary:
4 "Twere pity now if he should prove a counterfeit.

6 **Kath.** Bless the young man, our nation would be
laughed at
For honest souls through Christendom! My father
8 Hath a weak stomach to the business, madam,
But that the king must not be crossed.

10 **Countess of C.** 'A brings
12 A goodly troop, they say, of gallants with him;
But very modest people, for they strive not

14 To fame their names too much; their godfathers
May be beholding to them, but their fathers

16 Scarce owe them thanks: they are disguisèd princes,
Brought up, it seems, to honest trades; no matter,
18 They will break forth in season.

20 **Jane.** Or break out;

For most of 'em are broken by report. –

Entering Characters: a group of noble women enter the gallery, or balcony, at the back of the stage.

We met **Katherine**, the serious daughter of the Earl of Huntley, when she was being courted by Lord Dalryell back in Act I.ii. **Jane** is Katherine's attendant. We previously met the **Countess of Crawford's** husband, the Earl of Crawford, also in Act I.ii: it was he who came to call Huntley to the king's presence to witness the arrival of Warbeck.

1-21 (below): the conversation of the women suggests that while they are tentatively willing to believe that the expected visitor is the actual Duke of York, they also have their doubts.

= welcome or reception.^{1,6} = ie. Perkin Warbeck.
= ie. "(to bestow) favour".⁵

= innocent or naïve.¹

8-9: Huntley is against the whole Warbeck business, but he keeps his mouth shut so as not to anger James.
crossed = opposed.¹

11-18: the countess mocks Warbeck's followers for their having, out of modesty, "hidden" their noble standing by taking up trades and living as commoners. Her whole speech is humorously ironic.

= make famous.

15-16: **their fathers...thanks** = assuming the advisors were genuine nobility, they would naturally disappoint their fathers in concealing their high ranks.

= a stinging barb!

18: they will reveal their true noble identities at the appropriate time.

= an unclear expression, which gives us a good example of how different editors can give diverse glosses to a bit of text: Pickburn interprets **break out** to mean "become desperate"; Anderson suggests "escape from prison";⁹ and Gibson writes, "erupt (as a boil might), (2) escape from prison" (page 252).

= bankrupt, continuing the play on words with **break**.

22
24
26 The king!
28 **Kath.** Let us observe 'em and be silent.
30 *Enter King James, Earls of Huntley and Crawford,
Lord Dalyell, and other Noblemen.*

32 **K. Ja.** The right of kings, my lords, extends not only
To the safe conservation of their own,

34 But also to the aid of such allies
As change of time and state hath oftentimes
36 Hurled down from careful crowns to undergo
An exercise of sufferance in both fortunes:

38 So English Richard, surnamed Coeur-de-Lion,
40 So Robert Bruce, our royal ancestor,
42 Forced by the trial of the wrongs they felt,
Both sought and found supplies from foreign kings,
To repossess their own. Then grudge not, lords,

44 A much distressed prince: King Charles of France
And Maximilian of Bohemia both

[A flourish.]

Entering Characters: we finally meet **King James IV** of Scotland. **Huntley** is the father of Katherine, **Lord Dalyell** her disappointed suitor, both of whom we met in Act I.ii.

King James IV (1473-1513), reigned 1488-1513. As a teenager, James was made the figurehead of a rebellious group of nobles who assassinated James' father, King James III, in 1488. Reportedly, James regretted his part in causing his father's death, and supposedly wore an iron belt outside his doublet in self-imposed penance. James has always been considered one of Scotland's strongest kings, systemizing the administration of justice, building up the military, and preserving good relations with most of Europe.

= preservation. = ie. their own crowns.

34-37: kings also have an obligation to help other sovereigns (**allies**) retrieve their crowns when they have lost them through misfortune.

allies = stressed on its second syllable.

Hurled down = ie. dethroned.

careful = full of care or anxiety.¹

36-37: **to undergo...fortunes** = to endure both good and bad fortune.^{1,6}

38-42: **So English...their own** = James offers a pair of historical examples to support his theory that monarchs should help each other hang onto their thrones.

supplies = Gibson suggests "reinforcements".

English Richard = **Richard I**, nicknamed the Lionheart, or, in French, Coeur-de-Lion (1157-1199), reigned England 1189-1199.

*In the 1180's, Richard, not yet king, sought the help of France's young **King Philip II** (known also as Philip Augustus) in defending the duchy of **Aquitaine** (which Richard had been ruling independently since 1172) against the expected attacks of Richard's father **Henry II**, who wanted his son to renounce his hold on Aquitaine in favour of Richard's younger brother **John** – after all, Richard's older brother Henry had just died, leaving Richard heir to the throne of England. Richard went so far as to do homage to the French sovereign for all the other English-held lands on the continent.*

Robert Bruce = **Robert the Bruce** (1274-1329), reigned Scotland 1306-1329. Robert had been given refuge by England's **Edward I** in 1295, when the Bruces had decided their claim to the Scottish throne was superior to that of the current king, **John Balliol**.

= the Holy Roman Emperor.

46	Have ratified his credit by their letters; Shall we, then, be distrustful? No; compassion Is one rich jewël that shines in our crown, 48 And we will have it shine there.	45: Charles and Maximilian have written to James, confirm- ing their belief that Warbeck really is the young prince.
50	Hunt. Do your will, sir.	
52	K. Ja. The young duke is at hand: Dalyell, from us First greet him, and conduct him on; then Crawford 54 Shall meet him next; and Huntley, last of all, Present him <u>to our arms</u> . –	= ie. "into my arms", for an embrace.
56	[Exit Lord Dalyell.]	
58	Sound sprightly music, 60 Whilst majesty encounters majesty.	
62	[Hautboys play.]	= ancient reed instruments, similar to clarinets or oboes; the music plays throughout the ceremonial welcome.
64	<i>Re-enter Lord Dalyell with Perkin Warbeck, followed at a distance by Frion, Heron, Sketon, Astley, and 66 John A-Water. The Earl of Crawford advances and</i>	65-66: Frion...A-Water = these are Warbeck's advisors, the men the Countess of Crawford was making fun of earlier in the scene.
68	<i>entertains Perkin at the door; the Earl of Huntley next salutes him and presents him to the King: they embrace; the Noblemen <u>slightly salute his Followers</u>.</i>	= salutes, welcomes. = bow indifferently to Warbeck's advisors.
70	Warb. Most high, most mighty king! that now there stands 72 Before your eyes, in presence of your peers, A subject of the rarest kind of pity	71ff: Warbeck's speaking manner throughout the play is so high-styled as to be almost self-parodying. 73: Warbeck describes himself as a man worthy of the greatest degree of sympathy.
74	That hath in any age touched noble hearts, The <u>vulgar</u> story of a prince's ruin 76 Hath made it too apparent: Europe knows, And all the western world, what persecution 78 Hath raged in malice against <u>us</u> , sole heir	= well-known, familiar. ¹ = ie. "me"; Warbeck uses the "royal we".
	To the great throne of old <u>Plantagenets</u> .	= the name of the family that held the English crown from 1154 until Richard III's death in 1485; the new king, our Henry VII, was the first of the Tudor line.
80	How from our nursery we have been hurried Unto the sanctuary, from the sanctuary 82 Forced to the prison, from the prison haled By cruël hands to the tormentor's fury,	80-110: Warbeck relates his "official" story. Ford borrows lines 80-83 closely from Bacon, who quoted Warbeck as describing himself as one " <i>who hath been carried from the nursery to the sanctuary; from the sanctuary, to the direful prison; from the prison, to the hand of the cruel tormentor</i> " (p. 148).
84	Is registered already in the volume Of all men's tongues; whose true <u>relation</u> draws 86 Compassion, melted into weeping eyes And bleeding souls: but our misfortunes since 88 Have <u>ranged a larger progress</u> through <u>strange</u> lands, Protected in our innocence by Heaven. 90 Edward the Fifth, our brother, in his tragedy	84-85: Is registered...tongues = every man knows, and is talking about, Warbeck's story. = telling (of the story of line 75); with volume , a "book" metaphor. = wandered widely, ie. "taken Warbeck". = foreign. 90-99: as the young Duke of York, Warbeck was spared

92 Quenched their hot thirst of blood, whose hire to murther
 Paid them their wages of despair and horror;

94 The softness of my childhood smiled upon
 The roughness of their task, and robbed them farther
 Of hearts to dare, or hands to execute.

96 Great king, they spared my life, the butchers spared it;
 Returned the tyrant, my unnatural uncle,

98 A truth of my dispatch: I was conveyed
 With secrecy and speed to Tournay; fostered
 100 By obscure means, taught to unlearn myself:

102 But as I grew in years, I grew in sense
 Of fear and of disdain; fear of the tyrant
 Whose power swayed the throne then: when disdain
 104 Of living so unknown, in such a servile

106 And abject lowness, prompted me to thoughts
 Of recollecting who I was, I shook off
 My bondage, and made haste to let my aunt
 108 Of Burgundy acknowledge me her kinsman,
 Heir to the crown of England, snatched by Henry

110 From Richard's head; a thing scarce known ith world.

112 **K. Ja.** My lord, it stands not with your counsel now

114 To fly upon invectives: if you can
 Make this apparent what you have discoursed
 In every circumstance, we will not study
 116 An answer, but are ready in your cause.

118 **Warb.** You are a wise and just king, by the powers
 Above reserved, beyond all other aids,

being murdered like his "brother", King Edward V, the older of the young princes, thanks to the compassion of the killers.

murther = common alternate form for *murder*.

93-126 (below): Pickford notes that Warbeck abandons the royal "we", speaking in the first person, while he relates his personal story.

93-95: the murderers could not bring themselves to slay a second prince, touched as they were by his youth and innocence.

97-98: **Returned...dispatch** = the killers returned to Richard (the *tyrant* and the boys' *uncle*) and told him that they had indeed killed the young duke, along with his brother.

unnatural = lacking normal familial feelings.

dispatch (line 98) = violent death.

98-100: **I was...myself** = to explain away his known upbringing in *Tournai*, Warbeck describes how he was secreted away to that city by supporters, to be raised by a common family, and to forget who he was (*unlearn myself*).

101-4: **But as...unknown** = Bacon, whom Ford closely follows for this passage, makes it clear that the *tyrant* is Richard whom Warbeck fears will send agents to assassinate him; after Henry usurped the throne in 1585 (only two years after the death Edward the young prince in 1583), Warbeck then had to worry that Henry too might seek his "final destruction" (p. 150-1).

Note how Ford actually confuses the identity of *the tyrant*, since the clause **But as I grew in years** (line 101) covers more years than just the two from 1583-5.

= note that Warbeck never refers to or acknowledges either Henry or Richard as "king".

= "in the".

112-3: **it stands...invectives** = James admonishes Warbeck to speak with moderation, as all members of royalty should. We have seen Henry be accused of intemperate speech earlier in the play as well.

it stands...now = "it is inconsistent with your purpose" (Gibson, p. 255).⁶

113-6: **if you...your cause** = "if you can prove your story by describing every detail (*circumstance*), I will not waste time deciding how to respond: I am already prepared to help you."

115-6: **study an answer** = ponder how best to respond.

118-120: Providence has pegged James, more than anyone else, to be the one to help Warbeck to the throne of

120	To plant me in mine own inheritance,	England.
122	To marry these two kingdoms in a love Never to be divorced <u>while time is time</u> .	121-2: while Warbeck means they will be united as allies, Ford may have also been flatteringly alluding to the actual unification of England and Scotland when Scotland's James VI ascended England's throne as James I in 1603. <i>while time is time</i> = ie. for all eternity.
124	As for the manner, first of my escape, Of my conveyance next, of my life since, The means and persons who were <u>instruments</u> ,	= agents, ie. those who assisted him.
126	Great sir, 'tis fit I over-pass in silence; Reserving the relation to the secrecy	126-130: <i>'tis fit...questioned</i> = Warbeck will relate the details of his story to James privately, so as not to compromise those who have helped him along the way.
128	Of your own princely ear, since it concerns Some great ones living yet, and others dead,	
130	Whose <u>issue</u> might be questioned. <u>For your bounty</u> ,	130: <i>issue</i> = children, descendants; Warbeck does not want everyone to hear the names of those who helped him, as Henry might become suspicious of the loyalties of their families. <i>For your bounty</i> = "as for your generosity".
	Royal <u>magnificence</u> to him that seeks it,	131: a bit of flattery: James is always willing to assist those who ask him for help. <i>magnificence</i> = generosity. ^{1,6}
132	We vow hereafter to <u>demean ourself</u> As if we were your own and natural brother,	= ie. act, behave himself.
134	Omitting no occasion in our person T' express a gratitude <u>beyond example</u> .	= without precedent.
136	K. Ja. <u>He</u> must be <u>more than subject</u> who can utter	= ie. Warbeck. = more than a mere commoner.
138	The language of a king, and such is thine. Take this for answer: be what'er thou art,	
140	Thou never shalt repent that thou hast put Thy cause and person into my protection.	
142	<u>Cousin of York</u> , thus once more we embrace thee; Welcome to James of Scotland! for thy safety,	= <i>cousin</i> was a common vocative used between royals.
144	Know, such as love thee not shall never wrong thee. Come, we will taste a while our court-delights,	144: James guarantees Warbeck's safety during his residence in Scotland from those who would be his enemies.
146	Dream hence affliction past, and then proceed <u>To high attempts of honour</u> . On, lead on! –	= James looks forward to the martial challenge inherent in installing Warbeck on his throne. = "you and all your dependents will be my responsibility".
148	<u>Both thou and thine are ours</u> , and we will guard ye. – Lead on!	
150	[<i>Exeunt all but the Ladies above.</i>]	
152	Countess of C. I have not seen a gentleman	
154	Of a more <u>brave aspect</u> or <u>goodlier carriage</u> ;	154: <i>brave aspect</i> = excellent countenance; <i>aspect</i> is stressed on its second syllable. <i>goodlier carriage</i> = more dignified bearing.
	<u>His fortunes move not him</u> . – [<i>To Katherine</i>] <u>Madam, you're passionate</u> .	155: <i>His fortunes move not him</i> = "he handles his bad luck with great equanimity." <i>Madam, you're passionate</i> = the countess notices that Katherine seems agitated; Dyce suggests she is weeping.
156		

Kath. Beshrew me, but his words have touched me home,

158 As if his cause concerned me: I should pity him,
160 If he should prove another than he seems.

162 *Re-enter Earl of Crawford.*

162 **Craw.** Ladies, the king commands your presence instantly
164 For entertainment of the duke.

166 **Kath.** The duke
168 Must, then, be entertained, the king obeyed;
168 It is our duty.

170 **Countess of C.** We will all wait on him.

172 [Exeunt.]

ACT II, SCENE II.

London.
The Tower.

A flourish.
Enter King Henry, the Earls of Oxford and Surrey,
and the Bishop of Durham.

1 **K. Hen.** Have ye condemned my chamberlain?
2

B. of Dur. His treasons
4 Condemned him, sir; which were as clear and manifest
As foul and dangerous: besides, the guilt
6 Of his conspiracy pressed him so nearly,

8 That it drew from him free confessiön
Without an importunity.

10 **K. Hen.** O, Lord Bishop,
This argued shame and sorrow for his folly,
12 And must not stand in evidence against
Our mercy and the softness of our nature:
14 The rigour and extremity of law
Is sometimes too-too bitter; but we carry
16 A chancery of pity in our bosom.

18 I hope we may reprieve him from the sentence
Of death; I hope we may.

157-9: Katherine's sympathy for Warbeck foreshadows some interesting future developments.

Beshrew me = hang it all!
home = deeply.⁶

159: euphemistically, "if he should prove a fraud."

Scene II: faced with accusations of treason, Stanley has confessed to his crime.

= convicted; Stanley was found guilty of treason on 6 February 1495, in a trial of his peers.

5-6: **the guilt...nearly** = ie. "Stanley's guilt weighed so heavily upon him".
nearly = closely.⁹

= repeated entreaty.

= ie. "Stanley's voluntary confession is evidence of (his)".

= ie. reference to England's highest court after the House of Lords.¹

17-18: Henry interestingly refers to himself in the first person here, as a signal that his feelings are intended to be understood as personal, and not official.⁶ The clause, "**I hope we may**", which he says twice, fascinatingly distinguishes between the two perspectives: "I personally wish that I, as king, could save Stanley."

20 **B. of Dur.** You may, you may;
 And so persuade your subjects that the title
 22 Of York is better, nay, more just and lawful,
 Than yours of Lancaster! so Stanley holds:
 24 Which if it be not treason in the highest,
 Then we are traitors all, perjured and false,
 26 Who have took oath to Henry and the justice
 Of Henry's title; Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney,
 28 With all your other peers of state and church,
 Forsworn, and Stanley true alone to Heaven
 30 And England's lawful heir!

32 **Oxf.** By Vere's old honours,
 I'll cut his throat dares speak it.

34 **Sur.** 'Tis a quarrel
 36 T' engage a soul in.

38 **K. Hen.** What a coil is here
 To keep my gratitude sincere and perfect!

40 Stanley was once my friend, and came in time

To save my life; – yet, to say truth, my lords,
 42 The man stayed long enough t' endanger it: –

But I could see no more into his heart
 44 Than what his outward actions did present;
 And for 'em have rewarded him so fully,

46 As that there wanted nothing in our gift

20-30 (below): in this dangerously sarcastic speech, Durham argues that if Henry fails to sentence Stanley to death for committing treason, it must be because Henry believes, as does Stanley, that Warbeck, as a "Yorkist", has a superior claim to his throne, and that all the nobles present are by necessity traitors for swearing loyalty to Henry!

= ie. this is what Stanley must believe, based on his support for the Pretender.

= ie. highest degree.⁵

= alone is loyal.

30: ie. Warbeck.

20-30: **Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe** (c. 1448-1528). While a young itinerant scholar and priest living in France, Foxe was befriended by Henry of Richmond, who was in France himself at the time, plotting his rebellion against Richard III. After Henry's coronation (1485), Foxe remained a close and trusted advisor to the king for the remainder of Henry's life, being appointed **Bishop of Durham** in 1494. Foxe lived a long life, serving Henry VIII as well after Henry VII's death in 1509. Foxe may be most well-known today for founding Corpus Christi College at Oxford in 1517.

32: **Vere** was the family name of the Earl of Oxford.

= wager.^{1,5}

= fuss.¹

= genuine, pure.^{1,9}

40-41: **and came...my life** = at the Battle of Bosworth, William Stanley and his brother Thomas stood aloof from the fray with their individual small armies, watching the forces of Henry and Richard fight it out. At a key moment, Thomas sent William and his 3000 troops in on Henry's side, tipping the outcome in his favour.

41-42: **yet to...endanger it** = Henry momentarily considers that Stanley may not actually deserve his gratitude; after all, Stanley delayed (**stayed**) almost too long before entering the battle!

= the quarto prints '**em** here, emended universally as shown.

46-47: Henry did everything possible to reward (**gratify**)

To gratify his merit, as I thought,
48 Unless I should divide my crown with him,
And give him half; though now I well perceive
50 'Twould scarce have served his turn without the whole. –

But I am charitable, lords; let justice
52 Proceed in execution, whiles I mourn
The loss of one whom I esteemed a friend.
54

56 **B. of Dur.** Sir, he is coming this way.

58 **K. Hen.** If he speak to me,
I could deny him nothing; to prevent it,
I must withdraw. Pray, lords, commend my favours
60 To his last peace, which I with him will pray for:
That done, it doth concern us to consult
62 Of other following troubles.

64 [Exit Henry.]

66 **Oxf.** I am glad
He's gone: upon my life, he would have pardoned
68 The traitor, had he seen him.

70 **Sur.** 'Tis a king
Composed of gentleness.

72 **B. of Dur.** Rare and unheard of:
74 But every man is nearest to himself;
And that the king observes; 'tis fit he should.

76 *Enter Sir William Stanley, Executioner, Confessor,*
78 *Urswick, and Lord Dawbney.*

80 **Stan.** May I not speak with Clifford ere I shake
This piece of frailty off?

82 **Dawb.** You shall; he's sent for.

84 **Stan.** I must not see the king?

86 **B. of Dur.** From him, Sir William,
88 These lords and I am sent; he bad us say
That he commends his mercy to your thoughts;
90 Wishing the laws of England could remit
The forfeit of your life as willingly
92 As he would in the sweetness of his nature
Forget your trespass: but howe'er your body
94 Fall into dust, he vows, the king himself
Doth vow, to keep a requiem for your soul,
96 As for a friend close treasured in his bosom.

Stanley for effectively making him king,
wanted = lacked.

49-50 *though now...whole* = his mind turning again, Henry
speculates as to whether his friend carried a secret desire to
be king himself!

served his turn = satisfied him.¹

51-53: Henry retreats from his line of thought, but he is
clearly conflicted: indeed, how hard it must have been to
realize his closest friend of many years had turned against
him!

Proceed in execution = "take its course", with second-
ary reference to Stanley's expected punishment.

= ie. to avoid finding himself showing mercy to Stanley.
= "give him my good wishes" (Pickburn, p. 117).⁹

61-62: with the Stanley situation dispensed with, Henry must
immediately turn to deal with other problems of state.

= comprised.

74: proverbial: every man works for his own best interests.

= priest.

= the man who informed on him.
= ie. mortal body.²

= ie. may not.

= ie. "Henry commanded us to say".

89: "he wants you to know of his compassion for you."⁶

= transgression.

98 **Oxf.** Without remembrance of your errors past,
I come to take my leave, and wish you Heaven.

100 **Sur.** And I; good angels guard ye!

102

Stan. O, the king,
104 Next to my soul, shall be the nearest subject
Of my last prayers. – My grave Lord of Durham,
106 My Lords of Oxford, Surrey, Dawbney, all,
Accept from a poor dying man a farewell.
108 I was as you are once, – great, and stood hopeful
Of many flourishing years; but fate and time
110 Have wheeled about, to turn me into nothing.

112 **Dawb.** Sir Robert Clifford comes, – the man, Sir William,
You so desire to speak with.

114 **B. of Dur.** Mark their meeting.

116 *Enter Sir Robert Clifford.*

118

Clif. Sir William Stanley, I am glad your conscience
120 Before your end hath emptied every burthen
Which charged it, as that you can clearly witness

122 How far I have proceeded in a duty
That both concerned my truth and the state's safety.

124 **Stan.** Mercy, how dear is life to such as hug it! –

126 Come hether; by this token think on me!

128 [Makes a cross on Clifford's face with his finger.]

130 **Clif.** This token! What! I am abused?

132 **Stan.** You are not.
I wet upon your cheeks a holy sign, –
134 The cross, the Christian's badge, the traitor's infamy:
Wear, Clifford, to thy grave this painted emblem;
136 Water shall never wash it off; all eyes
That gaze upon thy face shall read there written
138 A state-informer's character; more ugly
Stamped on a noble name than on a base.

140 The heavens forgive thee! – Pray, my lords, no change
Of words; this man and I have used too many.

98: ie. "ignoring for the moment your crimes".

87-101: despite Stanley's villainy, the other nobles retain their fondness for the lord chamberlain, even as it is understood by all that there can be no other outcome possible than Stanley's death.

= ie. second only to.

= allusion to Fortune's wheel, which she is always spinning, raising the luck of some while lowering that of others.

= "pay attention to"; the nobles are naturally curious to see how Stanley's encounter with his informer will go.

119-121: **your conscience...charged it** = Clifford is pleased that Stanley has opted to discharge every burden with which his conscience was weighed down.

burthen = more commonly used than **burden** in this period.

as that = ie. so that.

= integrity.

125: Stanley bitterly suggests that Clifford values his life more than his honour.

126: **hether** = hither, a common alternate form. This is the only time the quarto prints **hether** for **hither**.

token = sign.

on = about.

= insulted; note how Clifford remains indignant over this affront, but no one pays attention to him: after all, no one likes a traitor or an informer!

= ie. the cross as a symbol of a Christian.

138: **character** = meaning both (1) disposition, and (2) sign.⁶

138-9: **more ugly...base** = to be an informer wears worse on a noble person (in both senses of "noble") than on a low-born or low-bred one.

= exchange.

= ie. already passed or exchanged.

142	<i>Clif.</i> Shall I be disgraced	
144	Without reply?	
146	<i>B. of Dur.</i> Give losers leave to talk; His loss is irrecoverable.	146-7: "let Stanley say what he wants; he will be dead soon anyway."
148	<i>Stan.</i> Once more,	
150	To all a long farewell! <u>The best of greatness</u>	= ie. "may God". ⁶
152	Preserve the king! My next <u>suit</u> is, my lords, To be remembered to my noble brother, <u>Derby</u> , my much-grieved brother: Oh, persuade him	= request. = <i>Thomas Stanley, 1st Earl of Derby (1435-1504), older brother of William. Like William, Thomas was not always loyal to one side or the other in the War of the Roses. The story of his weaselly ability to play both sides makes for quite entertaining reading. Also like William, Thomas brought a small army (5,000 men) to the field at Bosworth; but unlike William, Thomas stood aloof with his forces throughout the entire battle. It is Thomas who was the Stanley portrayed in Shakespeare's Richard III.</i>
154	That I shall <u>stand no</u> blemish to his house In chronicles writ in another age.	= be no permanent. 155: in the history books of the future.
156	My heart doth bleed for him and for his <u>sighs</u> : Tell him, he must not think the <u>style</u> of Derby, Nor being husband to King Henry's mother,	156: a reference to the belief that the heart loses a drop of blood for every <i>sigh</i> one takes. = title or name. 158: William Stanley's brother Thomas, 1st Earl of Derby, had been married to Henry's mother since before the Battle of Bosworth, making him Henry's step-father.
160	The league with peers, the smiles of fortune, can Secure his peace above <u>the state of man</u> . I take my leave, to travel to my dust: "Subjects deserve their deaths whose kings are just." – Come, <u>cónfessor</u> . – On with thy axe, friend, on!	= "the human condition (of uncertainty)" (Gibson, p. 261). ⁶ 161-2: Stanley's part in the play ends with a rhyming couplet. = stressed on its first syllable in this era.
164	[<i>He is led off to execution.</i>]	165: <i>Stanley was beheaded 16 February 1495 on Tower Hill, ten days after his conviction.</i>
166	<i>Clif.</i> Was I called hither by a traitor's breath	
168	To be upbraided? Lords, the king shall know it.	167-8: Clifford is still irate over Stanley's insult, but no one cares.
170	<i>Re-enter King Henry with a <u>white staff</u>.</i>	= this is Stanley's staff of office: see lines 190-1 below.
172	<i>K. Hen.</i> The king doth know it, sir; the king hath heard What he or you could say. We have given credit	172-6: Henry has heard the entire conversation with Stanley, Clifford, and the nobles.
174	To every point of Clifford's information, The only evidence 'gainst Stanley's head:	
176	'A dies for't; <u>are you pleased</u> ?	= sarcastic.
178	<i>Clif.</i> I pleased, my lord!	178: Clifford is taken aback by the king's tone.
180	<i>K. Hen.</i> <u>No echoes</u> : for your service, we dismiss Your <u>more</u> attendance on the court; take ease,	= "please do not repeat my words back to me." = further.
182	And live at home; but, as you love your life, Stir not from London without <u>leave</u> from us.	
184	We'll think on your reward: away!	= permission.

186	Clif.	I go, sir.	186: Clifford received his pardon on 22 December 1494, as well as a payment of 500 pounds on the following 30 January.
188		[Exit Clifford.]	
190	K. Hen.	Die all our griefs with Stanley! Take this staff	= Giles Daubeney, Lord (1451-1508). The young Daubeney had served Edward IV, but after having supported the Duke of Buckingham's failed rebellion against Richard III, fled to France. Always a "well-wisher" of the Earl of Richmond, he remained a trusted companion of King Henry VII, serving him in various capacities, including that of Lord Chamberlain after Stanley's execution. Daubeney died a year before the king he loyally served did.
192		Of office, <u>Dawbney</u> ; henceforth be our chamberlain.	
	Dawb.	I am your humblest servant.	
194	K. Hen.	We are followed	= ruin.
196		By enemies at home, that will not cease	
198		To seek their own <u>confusion</u> : 'tis most true	= city located 60 miles west of London.
200		The Cornish under Audley are marched on	
202		As far as <u>Winchester</u> ; – but let them come,	= snares.
204		Our forces are in readiness; we'll catch 'em	
206		In their own <u>toils</u> .	= of cavalry and infantry.
208	Dawb.	Your army, being mustered,	
210		Consists in all, <u>of horse and foot</u> , at least	207: ie. and loyal to the king.
212		In number six-and-twenty thousand; men	
214		Daring and able, resolute to fight,	= battalion or division.
216		And loyal in their truths.	
218	K. Hen.	We know it, Dawbney:	= John de Vere, thirteenth Earl of Oxford (1443-1513). De Vere's brother and father, devout Lancastrians both, were executed in February 1462, when the Yorkist Edward IV successfully seized the throne. Young John continued the family's tradition of supporting the Lancastrians, and paid for that bias by spending several spells in prison when the Yorkists were in power. He managed to escape imprisonment during Richard III's reign, and headed to France to join Henry of Richmond. At Bosworth, he commanded Henry's right wing, and for the rest of his long life received many honours and offices from the grateful king. De Vere was instrumental in the defeat of the Cornish rebels in 1497. He finally died a natural death on 10 March 1513.
220		For them we order thus; Oxford in chief,	
222		Assisted by bold Essex and the Earl	= ie. main division. = ie. "I will command".
224		Of Suffolk, shall lead on the first <u>battalia</u> ;	
226		Be that your charge.	221-2: Henry must be as prepared to use his army to reverse any setback on the battlefield as he is to use it to press home victory.
228	Oxf.	I humbly thank your majesty.	
230			
232	K. Hen.	The next division we assign to Dawbney:	
234		These must be men of action, for on those	
236		The fortune of our fortunes must rely.	
238		The last and <u>main ourself commands</u> in person;	
240		As ready to restore the fight at all times	
242		As to consummate an assured victory.	

224 **Dawb.** The king is still oraculous.
 = archaic form of "oracular", suggesting his statements are infallible,¹ or simply "wise".⁵

226 **K. Hen.** But, Surrey,
 We have employment of more toil for thee:
 228 For our intelligence comes swiftly to us,
 That James of Scotland late hath entertained
 230 Perkin the counterfeit with more than common
 Grace and respect, nay, courts him with rare favours.
 232 The Scot is young and forward; we must look for
 A sudden storm to England from the north;
 234 Which to withstand, Durham shall post to Norham,
 To fortify the castle and secure
 236 The frontiers against an invasion there.
 Surrey shall follow soon, with such an army
 238 As may relieve the bishop, and encounter
 On all occasions the death-daring Scots.
 240 You know your charges all; 'tis now a time
 To execute, not talk: Heaven is our guard still.
 242 War must breed peace; such is the fate of kings.

[*Exeunt.*]

ACT II, SCENE III.

Edinburgh.
An Apartment in the Palace.

Enter Earl of Crawford and Lord Dalyell.

1 **Craw.** 'Tis more than strange; my reason cannot answer
 2 Such argument of fine imposture, couched
 In witchcraft of persuasion, that it fashions
 4 Impossibilities, as if appearance
 Could cozen truth itself: this dukeling mushroom
 5: *cozen* = deceive.
dukeling mushroom = Crawford describes Warbeck with a pair of contemptuous words: *dukeling* simply means little or petty duke; *mushroom* was a common Elizabethan term used to describe any individual who has suddenly, and largely undeservedly, risen dramatically in status.

6 Hath doubtless charmed the king.
 = bewitched.⁵

8 **Daly.** 'A courts the ladies,
 As if his strength of language chained attention
 10 By power of prerogative.
 8-10: the women are mesmerized by Warbeck's smooth speech, which is backed by his allegedly royal blood.
 = privilege of royalty.¹

12 **Craw.** It madded
 My very soul to hear our master's motion:
 = angered.
 = ie. King James' proposal.²
 James has announced that he will support a marriage between Katherine and Warbeck.

14 What surety both of amity and honour
 14-17: Crawford is worried about the consequences to

16 Must of necessity ensue upon
 A match betwixt some noble of our nation
 18 And this brave prince, forsooth!

Daly. 'Twill prove too fatal;
 20 Wise Huntley fears the threatening. Bless the lady
 22 From such a ruin!

Craw. How the counsel privy

24 Of this young Phaëthon do screw their faces

26 Into a gravity their trades, good people,
 Were never guilty of! the meanest of 'em
 Dreams of at least an office in the state.

28 *Daly.* Sure, not the hangman's; 'tis bespoke already
 30 For service to their rogueships – Silence!

32 *Enter King James and Earl of Huntley.*

34 *K. Ja.* Do not
 Argue against our will; we have descended
 36 Somewhat – as we may term it – too familiarly
 From justice of our birthright, to examine
 38 The force of your allegiance, – sir, we have, –
 40 But find it short of duty.

national honour should a Scottish lady marry the fraud Warbeck.

surety = confidence or guarantee.

amity = friendship.⁹

match = marriage.

brave prince = excellent prince, ie. Warbeck, ironic.

forsooth = in truth.

20-21: Huntley is worried about the danger to his daughter's, and his own, reputation, if she must wed the imposter.

23-27 (below): Crawford mercilessly mocks Warbeck's crew of supporters, noting with amusement how they are being presently constrained, by the nature of their positions, to behave with a level of solemnity and seriousness (*gravity*, line 25) they would never have had to endure if they had stuck to the trades they had originally trained for!

= the term *Privy Council* was used to describe the king's close body of advisors, which was usually made up largely of high officials of the state; in applying this name to Warbeck's motley crew, Crawford's satire is biting.

The OED notes that *council* was often confused with *counsel* by the old writers.

24: Crawford refers to Warbeck as *Phaeton* as a way to describe the Pretender as a political novice, who, ambitious to accomplish something well beyond his abilities, is headed for certain destruction.

Phaeton was a son of *Apollo*, who, in a famous myth, granted Phaeton one wish to prove he was his father. Phaeton asked to be allowed to drive the chariot that pulled the sun across the sky for one day. Apollo, forced by his promise to acquiesce, warned the boy to be careful. Phaeton could not control the horses, and would have crashed onto the earth had not *Jupiter* killed him with a thunderbolt.

26-27: *the meanest...state* = even the lowest-born of Warbeck's followers hopes to receive a high office once Warbeck takes the throne, in return for his support.

29-30: one position to which the advisors will not aspire is that of hangman, because the job will already be filled – by the man who will hang them all!

Sure = certainly, an adverb.

their rogueships = parody of "their lordships".

Entering Characters: Huntley has been trying to convince the king that Warbeck is a fraud, so as to save Katherine from marrying him – and James is getting ticked off!

34-39: James warns Huntley that, by deigning to listen to the nobleman's arguments, he (James) has already lowered his dignity as king.

= strength.⁶

39: James accuses Huntley of being disrespectful.

42 **Hunt.** Break my heart,
Do, do, king! Have my services, my loyalty, –
Heaven knows untainted ever, – drawn upon me

44 Contempt now in mine age, when I but wanted
A minute of a peace not to be troubled,

46 My last, my long one? Let me be a dotard,
A bedlam, a poor sot, or what you please

48 To have me, so you will not stain your blood,
Your own blood, royal sir, though mixed with mine,
50 By marriage of this girl to a straggler:

Take, take my head, sir; whilst my tongue can wag,
52 It cannot name him other.

54 **K. Ja.** Kings are counterfeits
In your repute, grave oracle, not presently
56 Set on their thrones with sceptres in their fists.
But use your own detraction; 'tis our pleasure
58 To give our cousin York for wife our kinswoman,

The Lady Katherine: instinct of sovereignty

60 Designs the honour, though her peevish father
Usurps our resolution.

62
Hunt. O, 'tis well,
64 Exceeding well! I never was ambitious
Of using congees to my daughter-queen –

66 A queen! perhaps a quean! – Forgive me, Dalyell,

Thou honourable gentleman; – none here
68 Dare speak one word of comfort?

70 **Daly.** Cruel misery!

= Huntley's record of loyalty to the king is unblemished.

44: **mine age** = ie. "my old age".

44-46: **when I...long one** = "when I was but a figurative minute away from enjoying an anxiety-free old age in the time I have left?"^{6,11}

= "you can think me a senile old man".

= madman; London's Bethlehem Hospital for the insane was usually referred to as *Bedlam*, an old alternate name for Bethlehem.

= defile, make impure.

50: **this girl** = ie. Katherine; **girl** is a disyllable here.

straggler = tramp, vagabond: a reference to Warbeck's itinerancy.

52: ie. Huntley cannot call Warbeck anything but a **straggler**.

54-56: James is sarcastic; **Kings** = read as "those kings".

= opinion.¹ = read as "who are not".

= perpetrate.¹ = loss of reputation.¹

= ie. Warbeck.

59-60: **instinct...honour** = James' own **instinct** tells him that Warbeck is royalty, which makes him worthy of receiving Katherine as his wife.⁶

60-61: **though...resolution** = James is again sarcastic.

61: "would overrule my decision", with a metaphor of overthrowing the king.

63-65: Huntley, not above using irony himself, claims to be pleased that Katherine will wed Warbeck: if Katherine were to marry an actual prince or king, Huntley would presumably adopt the practice of bowing to her (**congees** = bows); but now, luckily, if she marries Warbeck, who is not genuine royalty, Huntley will be spared the effort and indignity.

= whore; it is interesting to speculate whether an audience would recognize the pun in the similar sounding words; note that Huntley immediately apologizes for talking this way about the woman Dalyell loves.

A queen! perhaps a quean! = this is the universally accepted emendation of the quarto's text, which reads, "A queen, perhaps a queen?" An early commentator, believing that Huntley would never use such a derogatory term as **quean** to describe Katherine, suggests the following emendation: "A queen, perhaps! A queen?"

67-68: **none here...comfort** = "won't anyone back me up here?" Dalyell and Crawford will take up the mantle on Huntley's behalf, but only half-heartedly.

72 **Craw.** The lady, gracious prince, maybe hath settled
Affection on some former choice.

74 **Daly.** Enforcement
76 Would prove but tyranny.

78 **Hunt.** I thank 'ee heartily. –

Let any yeoman of our nation challenge
80 An interest in the girl, then the king
May add a jointure of ascent in titles,

82 Worthy a free consent; now 'a pulls down
What old desert hath builded.

84 **K. Ja.** Cease persuasions.
86 I violate no pawns of faith, intrude not

On private loves: that I have played the orator
88 For kingly York to virtuous Kate, her grant
Can justify, referring her contents

90 To our provision. The Welsh Harry henceforth

Shall therefore know, and tremble to acknowledge,
92 That not the painted idol of his policy
Shall fright the lawful owner from a kingdom.
94 We are resolved.

96 **Hunt.** Some of thy subjects' hearts,
King James, will bleed for this.

98 **K. Ja.** Then shall their bloods
100 Be nobly spent. No more disputes; he is not
Our friend who contradicts us.

102 **Hunt.** Farewell, daughter!
104 My care by one is lessened, thank the king for't:

I and my griefs will dance now.

106 *Enter Perkin Warbeck,*
108 *leading and complimenting with Lady Katherine;*
Countess of Crawford, Jane,
110 *Frion, Astley, John A-Water, Heron, and Sketon.*

72-73: maybe Katherine already loves someone else.

75-76: to force Katherine into a marriage she does not desire would be tyrannical!

78: this line could be understood to be sarcastic.
'ee = frequent substitute for ye.

79-81: **Let any...consent** = James could just as well marry Katherine off to any middling Englishman, and make it right by providing a metaphoric marriage settlement (**jointure**)² of new high-ranking titles.
yeoman = respectable countryman or landholder.¹
challenge = demand as a right, ie. lay claim to.⁶
girl = a disyllable here.
ascent = advancement, promotion.

82-83: **now 'a...builded** = a lament: in the old days, marriages were granted based on merit (**desert**), but the king has effaced the old rules.

86-87: **I violate...loves** = James is unaware of Dalyell's interest in Katherine.
pawns of faith = promises to marry.

87-90: **that I...provision** = James has already spoken to Katherine about a marriage with Warbeck, so he suggests his advisors consult Katherine, who has consented to go along with whatever the kings wants!
provision (line 90) = providing.⁹

= ie. King Henry VII, who was born in Wales, and descended from the Welsh Tudors; notice how James, since he is recognizing Warbeck as England's legitimate sovereign, will not refer to Henry as "king."

= counterfeit, fraudulent.
= frighten. = ie. Warbeck.
= decided.

= ie. from sorrow.¹

104: Huntley claims to be relieved of further responsibility for worrying about and supporting Katherine.
105: a heart-rending metaphor.

= exchanging courtly courtesies.¹

112 Look, lords, look;
 Here's hand in hand already!
 114 **K. Ja.** Peace, old frenzy! –
 116 How like a king he looks! – Lords, but observe
 The confidence of his aspéct; dross cannot
 118 Cleave to so pure a metal – royal youth!
 Plantagenet undoubted!
 120

Hunt. [*Aside*] Ho, brave! – Youth,

122 But no Plantagenet, by'r lady, yet,
 By red rose or by white.
 124 **Warb.** [*To Katherine*] An union this way
 Settles possession in a monarchy
 Established rightly, as is my inheritance:
 128 Acknowledge me but sovereign of this kingdom,
 Your heart, fair princess, and the hand of providence
 130 Shall crown you queen of me and my best fortunes.

132 **Kath.** Where my obedience is, my lord, a duty
 Love owes true service.
 134 **Warb.** [*To James*] Shall I? –
 136 **K. Ja.** Cousin, yes,
 138 Enjoy her; from my hand accept your bride;
 140 [*He joins their hands.*]

142 And may they live at enmity with comfort

Who grieve at such an equal pledge of troths! –
 144 Y[ou] are the prince's wife now.

146 **Kath.** By your gift, sir.

148 **Warb.** Thus I take seizure of mine own.

150 **Kath.** I miss yet
 A father's blessing. Let me find it; – humbly
 152 Upon my knees I seek it.

154 **Hunt.** I am Huntley,
 Old Alexander Gordon, a plain subject,
 156 Nor more nor less; and, lady, if you wish for

= ie. "they are".

= deranged one; James is still peeved at Huntley.

117: *aspect* = stressed on its second syllable.

117-8: *dross...metal* = *dross* is the extraneous matter removed from metals during the purification process.¹ James' point is that Warbeck is of such obviously royal content that it is not possible he could be anything less.

121: *brave* = excellent.

Youth = the quarto prints *lady* here, which is universally emended as shown.

line 121: the line is shown as it has been punctuated by earlier editors; more recent editions print the line as, "Ho, brave youth,".

= "by our lady", an oath, a reference to the Virgin Mary.

123: an allusion to the symbols of the houses of Lancaster and York, respectively, who fought the War of the Roses.

132-3: Katherine, perhaps surprisingly, seems to be pleased to marry Warbeck, but her attraction was foreshadowed at Act II.i.157f.

= ie. anyone. = the quarto here prints *emnity*, an incorrect spelling which appeared more often than you would think in 16th and 17th centuries publications.

= exchange of wedding vows.

= perhaps used humorously as a legal term for a sudden taking of possession.

= lack.⁶

152: Katherine kneels before Huntley here; kneeling is the traditional dramatic form of supplication.

158 A blessing, you must bend your knees to Heaven;
 For Heaven did give me you. – Alas, alas,
 What would you have me say? May all the happiness
 160 My prayers ever sued to fall upon you
 Preserve you in your virtues! – Preethee, Dalyell,

162 Come with me; for I feel thy griefs as full
 As mine; let's steal away, and cry together.

164 **Daly.** My hopes are in their ruins.

166 [Exeunt Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell.]

168 **K. Ja.** Good, kind Huntley
 170 Is overjoyed: a fit solemnity

Shall perfit these delights. – Crawford, attend
 172 Our order for the preparatiön.

174 [Exeunt all but Frion,
 Heron, Sketon, John A-Water, and Astley.]

176 **Frion.** Now, worthy gentlemen, have I not followed
 178 My undertakings with success? Here's entrance
 Into a certainty above a hope.

180

Heron. Hopes are but hopes; I was ever confident,
 182 when I traded but in remnants, that my stars had
 reserved me to the title of a viscount at least: honour
 184 is honour, though cut out of any stuffs.

186 **Sket.** My brother Heron hath right wisely delivered
 his opinion; for he that threads his needle with the

= asked for.
 = please; the more frequently used form of the word was *prithe*. Huntley's words to Dalyell, as well as the latter's response, are presumably spoken out of the king's hearing.

= festivity, ie. wedding celebration.⁵

171: *perfit* = ie. perfect, a common alternate form of *perfect* as a verb; stressed on its first syllable.

171-2: *attend...order* = ie. "await my instructions".

Entering Characters: Warbeck's followers provide the play's comic relief.

177-9: Frion suggests that his work to promote Warbeck internationally is working, and that their *entrance* into James' acceptance will raise their *hopes* of success to *certainty* of success.

Stephen Frion had been a secretary to Henry VII, but had deserted his post, and entered the service of the French king. Frion was one of the ambassadors Charles had sent to Ireland in 1491 to invite Warbeck to France.

181ff (below): Speeches of the Advisors: note how Warbeck's counselors speak in hilariously absurd metaphors connected to their professions: Heron's speeches are littered with a mercer's lingo, Sketon with that of a tailor, and Astley with that of a scrivener.

Throughout the play, Warbeck's followers, excepting the erudite Frion, speak in prose, as ignoble and low-born Elizabethan characters frequently do.

181: *Gibson tells us that Heron was a London merchant who fled to Ireland to avoid creditors.*

182: *remnants* = leftover cloth; Heron is a mercer, or dealer in fine textiles.

182-3: *my stars...at least* = Heron refers to the *stars* in their role in determining individuals' fates.

= no matter the quality (ie. good or bad) of the metaphorical material (*stuffs*) from which honour derives.

186ff: Edward Sketon is a tailor.

188 sharp eyes of industry shall in time go through-stitch
 190 with the new suit of preferment.
 192 *Ast.* Spoken to the purpose, my fine-witted brother
 Sketon; for as no indenture but has its counterpawne,

no noverint but his condition or defeasance; so no right

194 but may have claim, no claim but may have possession,
 any act of Parliament to the contrary notwithstanding.

196 *Frion.* You are all read in mysteries of state,

198 And quick of apprehension, deep in judgment,
 Active in resolution; and 'tis pity
 200 Such counsel should lie buried in obscurity. –
 But why, in such a time and cause of triumph,
 202 Stands the judicious Mayor of Cork so silent?
 Believe it, sir, as English Richard prospers,
 204 You must not miss employment of high nature.

206 *J. a-Wat.* If men may be credited in their mortality,
 which I dare not peremptorily aver but they may or not
 208 be, presumptions by this marriage are then, in sooth,
 of fruitful expectation. Or else I must not justify other
 210 men's belief, more than other should rely on mine.

212 *Frion.* Pith of experience! those that have borne office
 Weigh every word before it can drop from them.

= a stitch drawn straight through material; hence, anything carried all the way to completion.¹
 = advancement (in rank, position or status).

191-5: Nicholas Astley is a scrivener, or scribe.

192: *indenture* = contract.¹
counterpawne = alternate form of *counterpane*, referring to the counterpart of an indenture, ie. a copy of a contract kept by the parties.¹

193: *noverint* = writ or bond.^{1,5}
his = its.
condition = a clause in a contract which is fulfilled when the contract takes effect.⁵
defeasance = a condition whose performance nullifies a contract.¹

197-200: Frion always treats his cohorts with entertaining gravity, though he is perfectly aware they are all buffoons.

read = learned.
 = to understand.

203-4: Frion reminds the mayor that he too should expect to receive a high position as Warbeck's prospects come to fruition.

English Richard = ie. Warbeck, as Richard, Duke of York: of course, Warbeck's followers must refer to him by this name and title, whether they believe he is that person or not.

206-210 (below): John A-Water's Speeches: the ex-mayor of Cork speaks with the convolution and equivocation of a true politician, usually descending into utter nonsense.

= "believed, mortal as they are" (Gibson, p. 269).⁶

= expectations.¹
 = uphold.⁶

212-3: Frion hilariously praises the mayor for thinking before he speaks!

Pith of experience = ie. "spoken with the gravity that comes from experience!"

214-8 (below): Frion suggests that Warbeck's advisors prepare an entertainment for the guests at his upcoming wedding. If they fail to do so, the Scots, some of whom will also put on a performance of some sort, would collect all the honour. Such entertainments, usually in the form of a masque, are frequently performed by the guests at a function

214 But, noble counsellors, since now the present
 216 Requires in point of honour, – pray, mistake not, –
 218 Some service to our lord, 'tis fit the Scots
 Should not engross all glory to themselves
 218 At this so grand and eminent solemnity.

220 **Sket.** The Scots! the motion is defied: I had rather,
 for my part, without trial of my country, suffer
 222 persecution under the pressing-iron of reproach;
 or let my skin be punched full of eyelet-holes with
 224 the bodkin of derision.

226 **Ast.** I will sooner lose both my ears on the pillory of
 forgery.

228 **Heron.** Let me first live a bankrout, and die in the lousy
 230 Hole of hunger, without compounding for sixpence in
 the pound.

232

J. a-Wat. If men fail not in their expectations, there
 234 may be spirits also that disgest no rude affronts, Master
 Secretary Frion, or I am cozened; which is possible, I
 236 grant.

238 **Frion.** Resolved like men of knowledge: at this feast, then,
 In honour of the bride, the Scots, I know,
 240 Will in some show, some masque, or some device,

Prefer their duties: now it were uncomely
 242 That we be found less forward for our prince
 Than they are for their lady; and by how much
 244 We outshine them in persons of account,
 By so much more will our endeavours meet with
 246 A livelier applause. Great emperors
 Have for their recreations undertook
 248 Such kind of pastimes: as for the conceit,
 Refer it to my study; the performance

250 You all shall share a thanks in: 'twill be grateful.

such as this.

= monopolize.²

= ie. the wedding of Warbeck and Katherine.

= ie. "the suggestion that the Scots are likely to engross
 all the glory for themselves is repudiated" (Pickburn,
 p. 122).⁵

= Gibson suggests, "trial by jury".

= a pointed tool for piercing a hole into cloth.¹

226-7: while secured in a pillory (stocks for the arms and
 head),⁷ a prisoner might have his ears nailed to the frame,
 with the expectation that the ears would be torn off as he or
 she moved.

= ie. bankrupted. = filthy.

230: **Hole** = in the debtor prison known as the Counter, the
Hole was where the poorer prisoners were kept;³ an inmate
 with a little money could usually purchase some comforts
 from his jailers.

compounding = "paying off my debts".⁶

230-1: **for sixpence in the pound** = at an interest rate of
 2.5% (since there were 240 pence in a pound).¹

= ie. digest, a common alternate form, meaning "tolerate".

= deceived.

= Frion congratulates the wise advisors for favouring his
 idea unanimously.

240: **masque** = a brief entertainment, usually with music and
 dancing, and involving gods and allegorical characters.

device = spectacle.

= present. = would be unseemly or unbecoming.

= enthusiastic, ie. eager to perform.

244: "we outperform the Scottish".⁶

248-250: **as for...thanks in** = Frion reserves for himself
 the job of devising and writing the masque, but assures the
 others they will each have a role to play in it.

conceit = idea (regarding the content of the masque).

= ie. the masque can be expected to be pleasing (**grateful**).¹

252-9 (below): the counsellors advise Frion as to their
 dancing skills.

252	Heron. <u>The motion is allowed</u> : I have stole to a dancing school when I was a prentice.	= "the suggestion for a pageant is agreed to." ⁵
254	Ast. There have been <u>Irish hubbubs</u> , when I have	= the tumult of noisy crowds, as at wakes and fairs. ^{1,11}
256	<u>made one</u> too.	= ie. taken part (in the dancing). ¹
258	Sket. For fashioning of <u>shapes</u> and cutting a <u>cross-caper</u> , turn me off to my trade again.	258: <i>shapes</i> = the OED suggests "one's posture" in dancing; but <i>shapes</i> can also mean "costumes" (we remember that Sketon is a tailor). <i>cross-caper</i> = a form of dancing. ¹
260		
262	J. a-Wat. Surely there is, if I be not deceived, a kind of gravity in merriment; as there is, or perhaps ought to be, respect of persons in the quality of <u>carriage</u> , which is as it is construed, either so or so.	= bearing.
264		
266	Frion. <u>Still you come home to me; upon occasion</u>	266: <i>Still...to me</i> = something like "you are always (<i>still</i>) on the same page as me." <i>upon occasion</i> = at all times. ¹
	I find <u>you relish courtship with discretion</u> ;	= "you practice courtly behaviour with moderation." ^{1,5}
268	And <u>such are</u> fit for statesmen of your merits.	= ie. "such tempered behaviour is". ⁵
270	<u>Pray 'e</u> wait the prince, and in his ear acquaint him	= "pray ye", ie. "please".
270	With this design; I'll follow and direct 'ee.	
272		
	[<i>Exeunt all but Frion.</i>]	
274	O, the toil Of humouring this abject scum of mankind,	274-281: now that he is alone, Frion tells us what he really thinks of his fellow-conspirators!
276	Muddy-brained peasants! princes feel a misery <u>Beyond impartial sufferance</u> , whose <u>extremes</u>	276-8: <i>princes feel...abettors</i> = in times of tribulation, kings must shamefully accept help from whoever willingly offers any, no matter how inferior in skill and status they are. <i>Beyond impartial sufferance</i> = "beyond that which one might ordinarily be expected to endure", or "in which one cannot help but take part" (Gibson, p. 123). ⁵ <i>extremes</i> = extreme circumstances.
278	Must yield to such abettors: – <u>yet</u> our tide Runs smoothly, without adverse winds: <u>run on</u> !	278-280: <i>yet our...sea</i> = a sailing metaphor for Frion's optimism: wind and tide are in their favour: the scheme to raise Warbeck to power is, so far (<i>yet</i>), ³ proceeding swimmingly! <i>run on</i> = "sail on", ¹ ie. "let us continue down this road!"
280	Flow to a full sea! time alone debates Quarrels forewritten in the book of fates.	280-1: <i>time...Quarrels</i> = perhaps, "time alone reveals causes' outcomes, which are predetermined by Fate." <i>debates</i> = diminishes. ¹
282		
	[<i>Exit.</i>]	

END OF ACT II.

ACT III.

SCENE I.

Westminster.
The Palace.

Enter King Henry, with his gorget on,
his sword, plume of feathers, and leading staff,
followed by Urswick.

1 **K. Hen.** How runs the time of day?
2

4 **Urs.** Past ten, my lord.

6 **K. Hen.** A bloody hour will it prove to some,
Whose disobedience, like the sons oth earth,
Throws a defiance 'gainst the face of Heaven.

8 Oxford, with Essex and stout De la Pole,
Have quieted the Londoners, I hope,
10 And set them safe from fear.

12 **Urs.** They are all silent.

14 **K. Hen.** From their own battlements they may behold
Saint George's-fields o'erspread with armèd men;

16 Amongst whom our own royal standard threatens
Confusion to opposers: we must learn

18 To practise war again in time of peace,
Or lay our crown before our subjects' feet;
20 Ha, Urswick, must we not?

22 **Urs.** The powers who seated
King Henry on his lawful throne will ever
24 Rise up in his defence.

Entering Characters: Henry and Urswick are dressed and armed for battle: today is the day they will face the Cornish rebel army.

gorget = piece of armour for protecting the throat.¹

leading staff = truncheon, ie. a staff representing command, like a marshal's baton.¹

1: while it was common to describe time as "running", and proverbial to observe that "time runs away", Ford here invented a new expression by which to ask for the time.

= a disyllable here: *OW-er*.

6-7: Henry compares the rebels to the **Titans** of Greek mythology. The Titans, offspring of Uranus and Gaea (she being the personification of **earth**, hence the Titans were **the sons oth earth**), overthrew the gods who ruled before them, before being themselves subsequently overthrown by the Olympian gods (Jupiter, etc.).⁴

oth = of the.

= brave.

9-10: Gainsford describes how the citizens of London went into panic mode upon the approach of the rebels, "*chaining the streets, making strong the gates, doubling the watches, [and] hiding their treasure*" (p. 81).

= quiet, ie. calm.

14-15: the Cornish rebels, now an armed mob of thousands, had traveled quickly through England, reaching Blackheath, a section of public land located four miles south-east of 16th century London,^{5,15} where they would be met by the royal forces.

battlements = ie. the city walls of London.

Saint George's-fields = an open area in Lambeth in south London.¹⁵

16-17: **Amongst...opposers** = Henry placed his own division of the army at St. George's Fields, keeping it directly between London and the rebels.

Confusion = destruction.

22-24: the armed forces (**powers**) who backed Henry in his quest for the English crown will ever be ready to fight on his behalf.

26 **K. Hen.** Rage shall not fright

28 The bosom of our confidence: in Kent
 28 Our Cornish rebels, cozened of their hopes,
 30 Met brave resistance by that country's earl,
 30 George Abergeny, Cobham, Poynings, Guilford,
 And other loyal hearts; now, if Blackheath

32 Must be reserved the fatal tomb to swallow
 Such stiff-necked abjects as with weary marches

34 Have travelled from their homes, their wives, and children,
 To pay, instead of subsidies, their lives,
 36 We may continue sovereign. Yet, Urswick,
 We'll not abate one penny what in Parliament
 38 Hath freely been contributed; we must not;

40 Money gives soul to action. Our competitor,
 The Flemish counterfeit, with James of Scotland,
 42 Will prove what courage need and want can nourish,
 Without the food of fit supplies: – but, Urswick,

44 I have a charm in secret that shall loose
 The witchcraft wherewith young King James is bound,
 And free it at my pleasure without bloodshed.

46 **Urs.** Your majesty's a wise king, sent from Heaven,
 Protector of the just.

50 **K. Hen.** Let dinner cheerfully
 Be served in; this day of the week is ours,
 52 Our day of providence; for Saturday
 Yet never failed in all my undertakings
 54 To yield me rest at night.

56 [A flourish.]

58 – What means this warning?
 Good Fate, speak peace to Henry!

62 *Enter Lord Dawbney, Earl of Oxford,
 and Attendants.*

64 **Dawb.** Live the king,
 Triumphant in the ruin of his enemies!

= violence.

27-31: **in Kent...hearts** = the rebel invaders were initially checked by a detachment of 500 royal soldiers at Guilford in Surrey County, near the border of Kent County, before moving on to Blackheath.

cozened (line 28) = deceived, cheated.^{1,6}

that country's earl = ie. Kent county's George Grey, Earl of Kent.

= ie. saved for the purpose of becoming.²

33: **stiff-necked** = obstinate.¹

abjects = exiles or downtrodden people.

as = who.

= ie. the taxes placed on Cornish, the cause of the revolt.

37-38: **what in...contributed** = a king could not raise taxes on his own initiative: an assessment could only be declared by Parliament.

Historically, the Cornish were protesting the heavy taxes levied by Henry to pay for the war against Scotland; but in our play, the war with England's northern neighbour has not yet started, so that Ford, in modifying the timeline of events, has, dramatically speaking, left it unclear as to why the tax was imposed.

39-42: **Our competitor...supplies** = Henry expects the poor Scots will lack sufficient provisions to maintain an army. The king is ironic here: James and Warbeck will learn to their chagrin the degree to which **need and want** (lack of provisions due to lack of money) will **nourish courage**.

prove = find out by experience.⁶

43-45: Henry has a secret plan to convince King James to abandon his support for Warbeck. He describes James' belief in the Pretender as being the result of witchcraft.

= ie. it is Saturday.

= the day which God made favourable for Henry,⁵ who won the battles of both Bosworth and Stokes Field on Saturdays.⁵

= fanfare of trumpets.

Entering Characters: **Dawbney** and **Oxford** have returned from doing battle with the rebels.

66	<i>Oxf.</i> The head of strong rebellion is cut off, 68 The body hewed in pieces.	
70	<i>K. Hen.</i> Dawbney, Oxford, 72 <u>Minions</u> to noblest fortunes, how yet stands The comfort of your wishes?	= favourites.
74	<i>Dawb.</i> Briefly thus: The Cornish under Audley, disappointed 76 Of <u>flattered</u> expectation, from the Kentish – Your majesty's right-trusty <u>liegemen</u> – <u>flew</u> , 78 <u>Feathered by rage</u> and heartened by presumption, To take the field even at your palace-gates, 80 And face you in your chamber-royal: arrogance Improved their ignorance; for they, supposing, 82 Misled by rumour, that the day of battle Should fall on Monday, rather <u>braved</u> your forces 84 Than <u>doubted</u> any onset; yet this morning, When in the dawning I, by your direction, 86 Strove to get <u>Deptford-strand bridge</u> , there I found Such a resistance as might shew what strength 88 Could make: here arrows hailed in showers upon us <u>A full yard long</u> at least; but we prevailed.	74-100: Dawbney describes the defeat of the Cornish. 75-76: the Cornish had wrongly expected the citizens of Kent to join them in rebellion. <i>flattered</i> = exaggerated. ⁶ = faithful subjects. = fled. 78-79: an interesting metaphor: the <i>feathers</i> enabled the Cornish to <i>fly</i> from Kent to the doorstep of London. 80-81: <i>arrogance...ignorance</i> = the rebels' blindness to the reality of their weakness was intensified (<i>Improved</i>) ⁵ by their overconfidence. 81-83: <i>for they...Monday</i> = Henry had tricked the rebels by spreading a rumour that he would attack them on the following Monday, but actually surprising them this day, Saturday. 83-84: <i>rather...onset</i> = the swaggering Cornish challenged (<i>braved</i>) the royal troops, having never suspected (<i>doubted</i>) that they would be attacked today. = the Battle of Blackheath (17 June 1497) was also known as the Battle of Deptford Bridge . = the arrows used by the English in their famous longbows measured in the yard range; it may be worth noting that the longbow was retired from military service in 1595, made obsolete by the introduction of firearms. ¹⁹
90	My Lord of Oxford, with his fellow peers <u>Environing</u> the hill, fell fiercely on them	90-91: Oxford's division had been placed on the hills surrounding (<i>environing</i>) Blackheath, trapping the rebels within, while Dawbney's forces faced the rebels directly. The king's division acted as a reserve.
92	On the one side, I on the other, till, great sir, – 94 Pardon the oversight, – eager of doing Some memorable act, I was engaged	93-94: <i>eager of...act</i> = typical chivalric sentiment: knights and noble warriors sought to perform especially brave acts, which often turned out to be reckless, in that such behavior endangered the whole for the benefit of one.
	<u>Almost a prisoner</u> , but was freed as soon	= the sources tell us that Dawbney had actually been taken prisoner by the rebels during the battle, but then either released or rescued.
96	As sensible of danger: now the fight 98 Began in heat, which quenched in the blood of Two thousand rebels, and as many more Reserved to <u>try</u> your mercy, have <u>returned</u> 100 A victory with safety.	97-99: <i>which quenched...mercy</i> = 2000 rebels were killed in battle, and another 2000 were captured, to be brought before Henry for judgment and sentencing. <i>try</i> = test. <i>returned</i> = yielded. ⁵

102	K. Hen. Have we lost An equal number with them?	
104		
106	Oxf. In the total Scarcely four hundred. <u>Audley</u> , Flammock, Joseph,	<i>= James Touchet, seventh Baron of Audley (1465-1497). Audley's father had served as Lord Treasurer under Richard III. Our Audley accompanied Henry on his brief expedition to France in 1492, where the National Biography suggests he got into debt, thereafter becoming "dissatisfied". He joined the Cornish rebels on their way to London, taking over the leadership.</i>
108	The ringleaders of this commotion, Railed in ropes, fit ornaments for traitors, Wait your <u>determinations</u> .	108: tied up in a row of ropes, which are appropriate accessories for traitors, since they can also be used as nooses. = sentencing. ¹
110		
112	K. Hen. We must pay Our thanks <u>where they are only due</u> : – O, lords,	= ie. to God and Heaven; only = alone. ⁶
114	Here is no victory, nor shall <u>our people</u> Conceive that we can triumph in their falls. Alas, poor souls! let such as are escaped	113-6: Henry has no wish to gloat in a victory over his subjects (<i>our people</i>); in fact, Henry's merciful nature once again comes to the fore, just as it did when he was presented with evidence of Stanley's perfidy.
116	Steal to the country back without pursuit: There's not a drop of blood spilt but hath drawn	117-8: There's not...mine = the king felt the pain of each Englishman killed or wounded in the battle.
118	As much of mine; their swords could have wrought wonders On their king's <u>part</u> , <u>who</u> faintly were unsheathed	118-120: their swords...breasts = the swords of the rebels would have been better served fighting for, and not against, their king; the result was that they brought harm only upon themselves. part = side. ⁵ who = which.
120	Against their prince, but wounded their own breasts. – Lords, we are debtors to your care; our payment Shall be both sure and fitting your <u>deserts</u> .	= deservings, merit.
124	Dawb. Sir, will you please to see those rebels, <u>heads</u> Of this wild monster-multitude?	= ie. those who were the leaders.
126		
128	K. Hen. Dear friend, My faithful Dawbney, no; on them our justice Must frown in terror; I will not <u>vouchsafe</u>	128-130: no...to them = once again Henry does not want to put himself in a position in which he might show mercy on those who deserve death, so he prefers not to come face-to-face with the rebel leaders. vouchsafe = deign or allow.
130	An eye of pity to them. Let <u>false</u> Audley Be drawn upon an <u>hurdle</u> from the <u>Newgate</u>	= disloyal. 131: hurdle = sledge for carrying prisoners to their executions. ¹ Newgate = a London prison.
132	To <u>Tower-hill</u> in his own coat of arms Painted on paper, with the arms reversed, Defaced and torn; there let him lose his head.	= located near the Tower of London, Tower Hill was the site of many of England's most famous executions. 134-7: let him...the rest = as a noble, Audley was granted the privilege of being beheaded; hanging was reserved for commoners. Traitors were further punished by quartering,

136 The lawyer and the blacksmith shall be hanged,
Quartered; their quarters into Cornwall sent

138 Examples to the rest, whom we are pleased
To pardon and dismiss from further quest. –
140 My Lord of Oxford, see it done.

142 *Oxf.* I shall, sir.

144 *K. Hen.* Urswick!

146 *Urs.* My lord?

148 *K. Hen.* To Dinham, our high-treasurer,
Say, we command commissions be new granted
For the collection of our subsidies
150 Through all the west, and that [right] speedily. –
Lords, we acknowledge our engagements due
152 For your most constant services.

154 *Dawb.* Your soldiers
Have manfully and faithfully acquitted
156 Their several duties.

158 *K. Hen.* For it we will throw
A largess free amongst them, which shall hearten
160 And cherish-up their loyalties. More yet
Remains of like employment; not a man

162 Can be dismissed, till enemies abroad,
More dangerous than these at home, have felt
164 The puissance of our arms. O, happy kings
Whose thrones are raised in their subjects' hearts!

166 [Exeunt.]

ACT III, SCENE II.

Edinburgh.
The Palace.

Enter Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalryell.

their bodies literally torn into four parts, each segment then sent out to different districts of England to be displayed as visible warnings to any potentially disgruntled citizens.

130-6: *Let false...Quartered* = the rebel leaders Audley, Joseph and Flammock were all executed.

Bacon describes Audley's humiliation pretty much as Henry describes here. Audley's head, we may add, was posted on London Bridge after his execution.

137-8: *whom we...quest* = Henry is typical of English stage sovereigns, who generally punished the leaders of rebellion, while pardoning the masses who followed them, so long as they promised to give up their parts in the insurrection.

quest = inquest, ie. official inquiry.¹

Henry granted amnesty to the rebels on 20 June, three days after the battle.

147-150: Henry will send out a new round of hired tax-collectors to Cornwall. *Dinham* was one Lord John Dynham, identified by Hall as Henry's treasurer.

= obligations.⁵

= loyal.

154-6: Dawbney graciously gives credit to the common soldiers of the royal army for performing well.

158-164: *For it...arms* = Henry will reward his troops with a gift of money (a *largess*), not just for past services, but also to keep them in active service until Warbeck and the Scottish are likewise crushed.

= ie. Warbeck and the Scottish.

= force.

Scene II: the scene takes place on the wedding day of Warbeck and Lady Katherine.

1 Hunt. Now, sir, a modest word with you, sad gentleman:	1-18: Huntley is bitter, and sarcastically describes the celebratory mood of the wedding festivities.
2 Is not this fine, I <u>trow</u> , to see the <u>gambols</u> ,	= suppose. ¹ = leaps made in dancing. ¹
To hear the <u>jigs</u> , observe the <u>frisks</u> , b' <u>enchanted</u>	3: jigs = dance music. ¹
	frisks = brisk movements made in dancing. ¹
	b' enchanted = ie. be enchanted, pronounced in three syllables.
4 With the <u>rare discord</u> of bells, <u>pipes</u> , and <u>tabors</u> , <u>Hotch-potch</u> of Scotch and Irish <u>twingle-twangles</u> ,	= fine disharmony. = ie. bagpipes. = small drums. ¹ = confused mixture. ¹ = sounds of harps. ¹
6 Like to so many <u>quiristers</u> of <u>Bedlam</u>	6: quiristers = choristers, ie. singers.
	Bedlam = nickname for London's Hospital of St. Mary of Bethlehem, the hospital for the insane.
	= singing a round. ¹ = hearty appetites.
8 The <u>healths</u> in <u>usquebaugh</u> and <u>bonny-clabber</u> ,	8: healths = ie. pledging of good health to others.
	usquebaugh = whiskey.
	bonny clabber = sour or curdled buttermilk, an Irish drink. ^{1,12}
10 The ale in <u>dishes</u> never fetched from China, The hundred-thousand <u>knacks</u> not to be spoken of, –	= vessels. ⁵ = delicacies, ^{1,6} tricks, ⁵ or devices. ⁹
	= the king and queen of the fairies: the image here is of Warbeck and Katherine as imaginary or fanciful royalty.
	Oberon is a character in <i>A Midsummer's Night Dream</i> , in which his queen is Titania; Mab is mentioned in <i>Romeo and Juliet</i> .
	= ie. "into ye", contracted into two syllables.
12 Should put a soul <u>int</u> 'ee. Look 'ee, good man, How youthful I am grown: but, <u>by your leave</u> ,	= ie. "if you don't mind".
14 This new queen-bride must henceforth be no more My daughter; no, <u>burlady</u> , 'tis unfit:	= ie. "by our lady", an oath.
16 And yet you see how I do bear this change, Methinks courageously: then shake off care	16-18: Huntley tries to convince Dalyell – and perhaps himself – that he is fully able to enjoy the festivities, forgetting all his worries.
18 In such a time of jollity.	
20 Daly. Alas, sir, How can you cast a <u>mist</u> upon your griefs?	21: Dalyell wonders how Huntley is able to cover up his distress. The obscuring mist (ie. a cloud), ¹ like a pain killer, prevents Huntley from experiencing his dejection.
22 Which, howsoe'er you <u>shadow</u> , but present	22-24: no matter how Huntley tries to conceal (shadow) ¹ his
24 To any judging eye the perfect substance, Of which mine are but counterfeits.	griefs, anyone who knows him can see that his pain is real, while Dalyell generously allows that his own distress, in comparison, is trivial.
	26-28: Foh...bridal-feast = Huntley, perhaps having begun to sing, rebukes Dalyell's attempts to draw him out of his artificial revelry.
26 Hunt. Foh, Dalyell!	30-32: Huntley modifies Dalyell's metaphor of line 21: it is
28 Thou interrupt'st the part I bear in music	tempests which obscure the sun, causing distress.
30 To this rare bridal-feast; let us be merry, Whilst flattering calms secure us against storms:	
The light of peace, and cloud the sun's bright eye	

32 In darkness of despair; yet we are safe.

34 **Daly.** I wish you could as easily forget
The justice of your sorrows as my hopes
36 Can yield to destiny.

38 **Hunt.** Pish! then I see
Thou dost not know the flexible condition

40 Of my apt nature: I can laugh, laugh heartily,
When the gout cramps my joints; let but the stone
42 Stop in my bladder, I am straight a-singing;
The quartan-fever, shrinking every limb,

44 Sets me a-capering straight; do but betray me,
And bind me a friend ever: what! I trust
46 The losing of a daughter, though I doted
On every hair that grew to trim her head,
48 Admits not any pain like one of these.

Come, th'art deceived in me: give me a blow,
50 A sound blow on the face, I'll thank thee for't;
I love my wrongs: still th'art deceived in me.

52 **Daly.** Deceived! O, noble Huntley, my few years
54 Have learnt experience of too ripe an age
To forfeit fit credulity: forgive
56 My rudeness, I am bold.

58 **Hunt.** Forgive me first
A madness of ambition; by example
60 Teach me humility, for patience scorns
Lectures, which schoolmen use to read to boys

62 Uncapable of injuries: though old,
I could grow tough in fury, and disclaim
64 Allegiance to my king; could fall at odds

With all my fellow-peers that durst not stand
66 Defendants 'gainst the rape done on mine honour:
But kings are earthly gods, there is no meddling
68 With their anointed bodies; for their actions
They only are accountable to Heaven.
70 Yet in the puzzle of my troubled brain
One antidote's reserved against the poison

34-36: Dalyell, sympathetic, hopes that Huntley can genuinely come to terms with his justified sorrow over Katherine's marriage as easily as Dalyell himself has accepted his fate in *not* marrying her.

38-44: *then I see...straight* = Dalyell obviously is not aware of how easy-going Huntley is, to the point where he can laugh, sing and dance, no matter what ails him.

= adaptable.⁶

= ie. a kidney stone, e.g.

= immediately.

= a fever which recurs every fourth day (similar to malaria, but malaria wasn't named until c. 1740).¹

= a-dancing.

= adorn.⁶

48: cannot cause him distress that is worse than any of the previously mentioned afflictions.

49: *th'art...in me* = Dalyell is under the misconception that Huntley is suffering.

49-51: *give me...wrongs* = the sense is, Huntley is impervious to pain, and as such, embraces his agonies; he asks Dalyell to strike him in the face to prove it!

still = always, continuously.

53-55: *my few...credulity* = "though I am young, my many experiences, which equal those of older men, have taught me not to believe everything I see so easily." Dalyell is gently telling Huntley he does not believe his act.

To forfeit fit credulity = "to lose my capacity to rationally judge what to believe" (Gibson, p. 278).⁶ Note the clause's delightful wordplay.

59-62: *by example...injuries* = Huntley asks Dalyell to show him *by example* how to handle his emotional torment, rather than *lecture* him, as if he were a schoolboy.

use = are accustomed.⁶

63-66: if he really wanted to, Huntley could, in protest over the wedding, turn against his king, and pick a fight with all those nobles – his so-called friends – who, fearing to contradict James, allowed Huntley to suffer this humiliation.

tough = perhaps "violent".⁶

= dared.

= defenders.

71-72: Huntley sees one way out of his agony, if only

72 Of my distractions; 'tis in thee t' apply it.

74 **Daly.** Name it; O, name it quickly, sir!

76 **Hunt.** A pardon

For my most foolish slighting thy deserts;

78 I have culled out this time to beg it: preethee,
 Be gentle; had I been so, thou hadst owned
 80 A happy bride, but now a castaway,
 And never child of mine more.

82 **Daly.** Say not so, sir;
 84 It is not fault in her.

86 **Hunt.** The world would prate
 How she was handsome; young I know she was,
 88 Tender, and sweet in her obedience:
 But lost now: what a bankrupt am I made
 90 Of a full stock of blessings! Must I hope
 A mercy from thy heart?

92 **Daly.** A love, a service,
 94 A friendship to posterity.

96 **Hunt.** Good angels
 Reward thy charity! I have no more
 98 But prayers left me now.

100 **Daly.** I'll lend you mirth, sir,
 If you will be in consort.

102 **Hunt.** Thank ye truly:
 104 I must; yes, yes, I must; – here's yet some ease,
 A partner in affliction: look not angry.

106 **Daly.** Good, noble sir!

108 [Flourish.]

110 **Hunt.** O, hark! we may be quiet,
 112 The King and all the others come; a meeting
 Of gaudy sights: this day's the last of revels;
 114 To-morrow sounds of war; then new exchange:
Fiddles must turn to swords. – Unhappy marriage!

116 [A flourish.]
 118 *Enter King James, Perkin Warbeck leading Lady
 Katherine, Earl of Crawford and his Countess;
 120 Jane, and other Ladies.*
 122 *Earl of Huntley and Lord Dalyell fall in among them.*
 124 **K. Ja.** Cousin of York, you and your princely bride

Dalyell will help him!

distractions = temporary madness.

76-81: Huntley feels he has let Dalyell down by failing to manage things better so that the young noble could have married Katherine.

= devaluing Dalyell's merit, ie. not having previously recognized that the young man is fully worthy of Katherine.

= carefully chosen this moment. = prithee, ie. please.

= generous.⁶

= chatter pointlessly.

= attractive.

90: **Of** = from.

full stock = **full stock** concludes a brief commercial metaphor with **bankrupt**.

94: a friendship that will be famous in future times.⁵

= ie. "join with me,"⁹ or "be in agreement."⁵

104-5: **here's yet...affliction** = the notion that misery loves company is an old one!

= must.

= brilliant, festive.²

= a perversion of Isaiah 2:4's "*they shall beat their swords into plowshares*" (KJV).

126	Have liberally enjoyed such soft delights As a new-married couple could <u>forethink</u> ;	= anticipate. ⁵
128	Nor has our bounty shortened expectation: But after all those pleasures of repose, Of amorous safety, we must rouse the ease	127: the sense of the line is "nor have I short-changed you of what you would expect with respect to my generosity."
130	Of dalliance with achievements of more glory Than <u>sloth</u> and sleep can furnish: yet, for farewell,	= ie. sloth, a common alternate form.
132	Gladly we entertain a truce with time, To grace the joint endeavours of our servants.	
134	Warb. My royal cousin, in your princely favour	
136	<u>The extent</u> of bounty hath been so unlimited, As only an acknowledgment in words	= pronounce as <i>Th' extant</i> .
138	Would breed suspicion in our state and quality. When we shall, in the fulness of our fate, –	137-8: "that if I were to only thank you with words, it would raise suspicion whether I truly am who I say I am."
140	Whose <u>minister</u> , <u>necessity</u> , will <u>perfit</u> , – Sit on our own throne; then <u>our</u> arms, laid open To gratitude, in sacred memory Of these large benefits, shall <u>twine them close</u> , Even to our thoughts and heart, without distinction. Then James and Richard, being in effect One person, shall unite and rule one people, Divisible in titles only.	139-141: <i>When we...throne</i> = ie. "when I am king of England". 140: ie. personified <i>Necessity</i> will assist personified <i>Fate</i> . <i>minister</i> = agent. <i>perfit</i> = perfect. = ie. "my". = "embrace them tightly".
148		141-7: James' Generous Nature: <i>actually, James did not support Warbeck solely out of the goodness of his heart, nor were Warbeck's promises to pay James back so general: Warbeck actually signed a contract that promised to deliver the town of Berwick and pay James 50,000 marks, should he successfully take the throne of England.</i>
150	K. Ja. Seat ye. – Are the <u>presenters</u> ready?	= performers.
152	Craw. All are entering.	
154	Hunt. <u>Dainty sport toward</u> , Dalyell! sit; come, sit, Sit and be quiet; here are <u>kingly bug's-words!</u>	= "delightful entertainment is at hand". ^{1,5} = high-sounding or inflated language as would be expected in a royal performance; ^{5,6} the masque, however, is without speech, as is normal.
156		= ludicrous-acting performers. ¹ = appropriately.
158	<i>Enter at one door Four Scotch Antics, accordingly habited; at another, Warbeck's followers,</i>	= dressed.
160	<i>disguised as Four Wild Irish in trowses, long-haired, and accordingly habited.</i>	159: <i>Four Wild Irish</i> = in Elizabethan drama, Ireland was frequently stereotyped as being populated by savages. <i>trowses</i> = ie. <i>trousers</i> , which seem to have been a traditional part of Irish dress since ancient times. The word <i>trousers</i> itself is derived from the Irish <i>triús</i> or <i>trews</i> . ¹⁰
162	<i>Music. A dance by the Masquers.</i>	162: there is a pause in the action here for both court and theatre audiences to enjoy the dancing of the masquers, which are comprised of the four Scots and Warbeck's advisors.

164	K. Ja. To all a general thanks!	
166	Warb. In the next room <u>Take your own shapes again</u> ; you shall receive	= "change back into your regular clothes".
168	Particular acknowledgment.	168: ie. individual gifts of money.
170	[<i>Exeunt the Masquers.</i>]	
172	K. Ja. Enough	
174	Of merriments. – Crawford, how far's our army Upon the march?	
176	Craw. At <u>Hedon-hall</u> , great king; Twelve thousand, well-prepared.	= building located near Duns, Berwick County, in the Scottish Borders, in far south-east Scotland. ¹⁵
178	K. Ja. Crawford, to-night	
180	<u>Post thither</u> . We in person, with the prince, By four o'clock to-morrow after dinner	= "get down there quickly!"
182	Will be <u>w'ee</u> ; speed away!	= ie. "with ye".
184	Craw. I fly, my lord.	
186	[<i>Exit.</i>]	
188	K. Ja. Our business <u>grows to head</u> now: where's your <u>secretary</u> ,	= is reaching a critical point. = ie. Frion.
190	That he attends 'ee not to serve?	189: ie. "who is not by your side where he should be?".
192	Warb. With <u>Marchmont</u> ,	= Marchmont was a title used to designate the Scottish Herald of Arms; Marchmont serves as a messenger for James.
194	K. Ja. Good: the proclamation's ready;	194-6: the proclamations...title = proclamations were issued, intended to be read or heard by the subjects of England, announcing the arrival of the true king. James suggests these will give them an idea how receptive the English will be to Warbeck's claim.
196	By that it will appear how <u>the English</u> stand Affected to your title. – Huntley, comfort	the English = pronounced as <i>th' English</i> , in two syl- lables.
198	Your daughter in her husband's absence; fight With prayers at home for us, who for your honours Must toil in fight abroad.	
200	Hunt. Prayers are the weapons	201-3: <i>Lord Huntley, both here and later, will comment on his own great age; but he would have only been about 55 years of age at this time.</i>
202	Which men so near their graves as I do use; I've little else to do.	
204	K. Ja. <u>To rest</u> , young beauties! –	= ie. to bed.
206	We must be early stirring; quickly part: " <u>A kingdom's</u> rescue craves both speed and <u>art</u> ." –	206-7: a rhyming couplet ends James' part in this scene. = ie. Warbeck's kingdom, England. = skill or cunning.
208	Cousins, good-night.	
210	[<i>A flourish.</i>]	
212	Warb. Rest to our cousin-king.	
214	Kath. Your blessing, sir.	

216	Hunt. Fair blessings on your highness! <u>sure</u> , you need 'em.	= surely.
218	[<i>Exeunt all but Warbeck, Lady Katherine, and Jane.</i>]	
220	Warb. Jane, set the lights down, and from us <u>return</u>	= ie. give.
222	To <u>those in the next room</u> this little purse;	= ie. the masquers.
222	Say we'll deserve their loves.	
224	Jane. It shall be done, sir.	
226	[<i>Exit Jane.</i>]	
228	Warb. Now, dearest, ere sweet sleep shall seal those eyes,	= before; note the line's lovely alliteration.
230	Love's precious <u>tapers</u> , give me <u>leave</u> to use	= lights. = permission.
230	A parting ceremony; for to-morrow	
232	It would be sacrilege <u>to intrude</u> upon	231-2: <i>to intrude...peace</i> = ie. "to wake you up." <i>to intrude</i> = pronounce as <i>t' intrude</i> , in two syllables.
232	The temple of thy peace: swift as the morning	= the first feathering, or soft covering, of a bird. ¹
234	Must I break from the <u>down</u> of thy embraces,	= ie. armour. = walk.
234	To put on <u>steel</u> , and <u>trace</u> the paths which lead	= ie. accompanied by anxiety. ¹
236	Through various hazards to a <u>careful</u> throne.	
236	Kath. My lord, I <u>would fain go</u> w'ee; there's small fortune	237: <i>would fain go w'ee</i> = "would be happy to or like to go with ye."
238	In staying here behind.	237-8: <i>there's small...behind</i> = Katherine suggests there is nothing for her to gain in being separated from Warbeck.
240	Warb. The <u>churlish</u> brow	= harsh, rough. ¹
242	Of war, fair dearest, is a sight of horror	
242	For ladies' entertainment: if thou hear'st	242-3: <i>if thou...ending</i> = ie. "if you hear that I was killed".
244	A truth of my sad ending by the hand	
244	Of some <u>unnatural subject</u> , thou <u>withal</u>	244: <i>unnatural subject</i> = <i>unnatural</i> is used typically to refer to one without the normal close feelings associated with those in familial relationships; ¹ used by extension here to refer to an English <i>subject</i> who <i>unnaturally</i> fights against his own king – who is, in this case, Warbeck, of course. <i>withal</i> = additionally.
246	Shalt hear how I died worthy of my right,	= "in the final musical phrase", ^{1,6} a metaphor with <i>sing</i> in line 248.
246	By falling like a king; and <u>in the close</u> ,	
248	Which my last breath shall sound, thy name, thou fairest,	
248	Shalt sing a requiem to my soul, unwilling	= ie. "because it means I will be separated".
250	Only of greater glory, <u>'cause divided</u>	
250	From such a Heaven on earth as life with thee.	
252	But these are <u>chimes</u> for funerals: my business	251-2: Warbeck recognizes that he is harping on his hypothetical death, when he is very much alive, and is enthusiastically about to enter the game! <i>chimes</i> = tolling of a church bell. ⁶
252	Attends on fortune of a sprightlier triumph;	
254	For love and majesty are reconciled,	
254	And vow to crown thee empress of the west.	
256	Kath. You have a noble language, sir; your right	256-7: <i>your right...question</i> = recalling Warbeck's use of the word <i>right</i> in line 245 above, Katherine seems to be: (1) assuring her husband that she is without doubt that he is indeed the young prince, and the rightful heir to the English throne; but perhaps also (2) confirming that his interest in her personally (as his wife) is undisputed, regardless of his identity, or what

258 In me is without question, and however
 Events of time may shorten my deserts
 260 In others' pity, yet it shall not stagger
Or constancy or duty in a wife.

262 You must be king of me; and my poor heart
 Is all I can call mine.

264 **Warb.** But we will live,
 Live, beauteous virtue, by the lively test

266 Of our own blood, to let the counterfeit
 Be known the world's contempt.

268 **Kath.** Pray, do not use
 270 That word; it carries fate in't. The first suit
I ever made, I trust your love will grant.

272 **Warb.** Without denial, dearest.

274 **Kath.** That hereafter,
 276 If you return with safety, no adventure
 May sever us in tasting any fortune:
 278 I ne'er can stay behind again.

280 **Warb.** Y'are lady
 Of your desires, and shall command your will;
 282 Yet 'tis too hard to promise.

284 **Kath.** What our destinies
 Have ruled-out in their books we must not search,
 286 But kneel to.

288 **Warb.** Then to fear when hope is fruitless,
 Were to be desperately miserable;
 290 Which poverty our greatness dares not dream of,
 And much more scorns to stoop to: some few minutes

292 Remain yet; let's be thrifty in our hopes.

294 [Exeunt.]

ACT III, SCENE III.

Westminster.
 The Palace.

happens to him.

257-260: **however...a wife** = "should events turn out badly, such that I get no pity from others, my fidelity to you will not diminish in the slightest."

deserts = deservings.

In others' = of others'.

stagger = cause to waver.¹

Or...or (line 260) = either...or.

265-6: **by the...blood** = "by the living proof of my own royal blood".⁶

266-7: **to let...contempt** = Warbeck is confident that his victory will prove to the world that he is the true King of England, while Henry, the real fraud, will become an object of scorn.

= please.

= ie. counterfeit. = request or favour.

= ie. to Warbeck.

= mistress.⁶

284-6: the couple must accept the fact that there are certain things which the book of fate will not give them.

288-291: **Then to...stoop to** = to be afraid when events have turned hopelessly against you is to be truly wretched; but in fact, Warbeck's pride disdains to allow him to think in this fashion. The Pretender's broad point is, that he must remain optimistic.

poverty = ie. poverty of spirit.

= prosperous.^{1,6}

Scene III: The international scene was rather complicated at this time, but many of Western Europe's major powers

took a great interest in the outcome of Warbeck's claims to the throne: **France** having invaded **Italy**, **Spain**, **Venice** and the **Holy Roman Emperor** were in the process of forming a league to oppose the French, and were anxious for Henry's support. Additionally, the Spanish monarchs, famous **Ferdinand and Isabella**, were negotiating to have their daughter **Katherine of Aragon** marry Henry's elder son **Prince Arthur**. Thus, the security of Henry's throne was of paramount interest to them.

At the same time as the Scottish were invading northern England, Spain sent an ambassador to James, one **Pedro de Ayala** (our Hialas), to try to convince James to abandon Warbeck and make peace with Henry. Ford has Ayala meeting with Henry first, but Ayala actually sailed directly to Scotland from Spain.

Enter King Henry, Hialas, and Urswick.

Entering Characters: **King Henry** has had the good fortune to receive in his court **Hialas**, a Spanish envoy, who is on his way to Scotland to help bring peace between Spain and England. Henry naturally sees fit to help Hialas in his mission.

1 **K. Hen.** Your name is Pedro Hialas, a Spaniard?

2
3 **Hial.** Sir, a Castilian born.

4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

K. Hen. King Ferdinand,
With wise Queen Isabel his royal consort,
Write 'ee a man of worthy trust and candour.
Princes are dear to Heaven who meet with subjects
Sincere in their employments; such I find

Your commendation, sir. Let me deliver
How joyful I repute the amity

With your most fortunate master, who almost
Comes near a miracle in his success
Against the Moors, who had devoured his country,

Entire now to his sceptre. We, for our part,
Will imitate his providence, in hope

Of partage in the use on't: we repute
The privacy of his advisement to us
By you, intended an ambassador
To Scotland, for a peace between our kingdoms,
A policy of love, which well becomes
His wisdom and our care.

= **Ferdinand**, the heir to the throne of **Aragon**, married **Isabella**, the heiress to the **Castilian** throne, in 1469; Isabella became queen in 1474, and when Ferdinand became King of Aragon at his father's passing in 1479, the famous royal couple united, for the first time, under one government the lands now known as Spain.⁸

Hialas, as a point of pride, identifies himself to Henry as specifically **Castilian**, rather than by the broader term of **Spanish**.

= "describes you in writing as".

8-9: **Princes...employments** = "a king must surely be loved by Heaven if it provides him with such trustworthy subjects."

= express.⁶

11-12: **How joyful...master** = Henry is pleased to be friends with the great Spanish monarch!

repute = regard.¹

12-14: **who almost...country** = the **Moors** had ruled the Iberian Peninsula since the 8th century. The reconquest of Spain was completed by Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492.⁸

= Ferdinand is now sole master of all of Spain.

= foresight, management or government of affairs.^{1,6,9}

17: **of partage...on't** = sharing in its benefit.^{1,2,5}

17-22: **we repute...our care** = "I attribute (**repute**)¹ Ferdinand's sending you, his envoy, to me in secret first (before you go to Scotland) to be a result of his genuine concern for my well-being."

24 **Hial.** Your majesty
Doth understand him rightly.

26

28 **K. Hen.** Else
Your knowledge can instruct me; wherein, sir,

30 To fall on ceremony would seem useless,
Which shall not need; for I will be as studious

32 Of your concealment in our conference
As any council shall advise.

34 **Hial.** Then, sir,
My chief request is, that on notice given
36 At my dispatch in Scotland, you will send
Some learnèd man of power and experience
38 To join entreaty with me.

40 **K. Hen.** I shall do it,
Being that way well provided by a servant
42 Which may attend 'ee ever.

44 **Hial.** If King James,
By any indirection, should perceive

46 My coming near your court, I doubt the issue
Of my employment.

48

50 **K. Hen.** Be not your own herald:
I learn sometimes without a teacher.

52 **Hial.** Good days
Guard all your princely thoughts!

54

56 **K. Hen.** Urswick, no further
Than the next open gallery attend him. –
A hearty love go with you!

58

Hial. Your vowed beadsman.

60 [Exeunt Urswick and Hialas.]

62

64 **K. Hen.** King Ferdinand is not so much a fox,
But that a cunning huntsman may in time
66 Fall on the scent: in honourable actions
Safe imitation best deserves a praise.

27-28: **Else...instruct me** = ie. "if I am wrong in any way, you may correct me."

29-30: **To fall...not need** = Henry basically suggests that they skip the formalities normally accompanying the arrival of the representative of an important country (due to the secret nature of Hialas' visit).

= meeting or conferring;¹ Hialas' visit to England will be kept confidential.

35-36: **that on...Scotland** = when Henry next receives a message from Hialas from Scotland.

= negotiations.¹

40-42: Henry has a man in mind for the job – the Bishop of Durham, who has already been posted to northern England.

= roundabout way. = hear of.

= outcome, ie. success; despite Henry's assurances, Hialas is still concerned that James might learn of his visit to the English monarch.

44-47: Pickburn sees Hialas here as hinting to Henry that he deserves a reward for taking on so dangerous a mission, which will inure to Henry's benefit.

49-50: Henry is mildly sarcastic: he doesn't need to be told the obvious.

52-53: the subtle Hialas recognizes that Henry has picked up on his hint!

55-56: Urswick has already been given instructions to provide Hialas everything he needs for his errand, including giving him money.
gallery = corridor.¹

59: the sense is, "your humble servant."

beadsman = literally, one who is paid to pray for another.¹¹

61: as Hialas is leaving, he mutters something to Urswick, which Henry hears but cannot make out.

63-66: with this fabulous hunting metaphor, Henry points out that he is very well aware that Ferdinand, the crafty **fox**, has other motives in mind for sending Hialas to see him; but since the Spaniard's mission tends towards Henry's benefit anyway, it is best for Henry (the **cunning huntsman**) to play along.

68 *Re-enter Urswick.*

70 What, the Castilian's passed away?

72 *Urs.* He is,
And undiscovered; the two hundred marks

74 Your majesty conveyed, 'a gently pursed
With a right modest gravity.

76 *K. Hen.* What was't
78 'A muttered in the earnest of his wisdom?
80 'A spoke not to be heard; 'twas about –

Urs. Warbeck:
82 How if King Henry were but sure of subjects,
84 Such a wild runagate might soon be caged,
No great ado withstanding.

86 *K. Hen.* Nay, nay; something
About my son Prince Arthur's match.

88 *Urs.* Right, right, sir:
90 He hummed it out, how that King Ferdinand
Swore that the marriage 'twixt the Lady Katherine
92 His daughter and the Prince of Wales your son

94 Should never be consummated as long
As any Earl of Warwick lived in England,

96 Except by new creation.

68: Urswick has prepared and sent out Hialas on his mission to King James, including his reward for services to the English crown. Note the compression of time: Urswick did all this in the time it took Henry to speak 4 lines.

= departed.¹

73: *undiscovered* = unrevealed, ie. secretly.

marks = a *mark* was a unit of currency, valued at 2/3 of a pound sterling.¹
= pocketed.⁶

= gravity or seriousness,¹ but Anderson sees a pun on *earnest's* alternate meaning of "down-payment".

= wanderer or itinerant person.¹

84: "there being no serious opposition."⁵

86-87: Henry is cagey: he heard more than he first let on!
= marriage.

89: Urswick must recover: "oh, yes, I almost forgot"
= murmured.¹

= ie. Henry's first-born son, **Arthur**. The Spanish monarchs had been tentatively planning for the marriage of their daughter **Katherine** to Henry VII's eldest son Arthur (1486-1502) since 1488 as a way to cement the two countries' relationship.

There is evidence, however, that Ferdinand and Isabella worried about how secure Henry's regime was; after all, he himself had overthrown the previous king (Richard III) after the latter had only reigned three years; the rise of pretenders concerned them, as did the existence of Richard's nephew **Edward, Earl of Warwick**, on behalf of whom his Yorkist supporters might also make a claim to the throne. This latter worry on the part of the royal couple is expressed more explicitly in this speech.

= see the note at the end of this speech.

95: a hint that the Spanish would like to see Edward dead before allowing Katherine to marry Arthur: if Edward were dispatched, then the only way any Earl of Warwick could exist would be if Henry invested someone new with that title!

Note how Hialas has dropped the hint regarding the delicate matter of the fate of the Earl of Warwick to Urswick, rather than to Henry directly.

Edward, Earl of Warwick (1475-1499): *Edward was the only surviving son of George, Earl of Clarence (Clarence was the brother of Edward IV and Richard III), who was*

killed in the Tower in 1478 (accused of treason against his brother King Edward IV), possibly at the instigation of Richard.

After Richard usurped the throne in 1483, young Edward, now an orphan (his mother had died when Edward was an infant), was at first treated well by the new king; but when Richard's own son and heir died, he named John de la Pole, his nephew and the Earl of Lincoln, his heir, and confined Edward to Sheriff Hutton Castle in North Yorkshire.

After Henry defeated Richard at the Battle of Bosworth (1485), Henry, now king, moved Edward to the Tower, where he remained for the rest of his life; he only left the Tower one day, when the Pretender Lambert Simnel, who was impersonating Edward, was crowned king in Ireland: Edward was paraded through the streets of London and allowed to attend mass at St. Paul's, so that the English could see the true Earl of Warwick was still alive and in prison.

The injustice of his treatment did not escape notice during those years.

98 **K. Hen.** I remember
"Twas so, indeed: the king his master swore it?

100 **Urs.** Directly, as he said.

102 **K. Hen.** An Earl of Warwick! –
Provide a messenger for letters instantly

104 To Bishop Fox. Our news from Scotland creeps;
It comes so slow, we must have airy spirits;
106 Our time requires dispatch. –

[*Aside*] The Earl of Warwick!

108 Let him be son to Clarence, younger brother
To Edward! Edward's daughter is, I think,
110 Mother to our Prince Arthur. – Get a messenger.

112 [Exeunt.]

ACT III, SCENE IV.

Northern England: before the Castle of Norham.

= precisely.^{1,9}

103-5: Henry recognizes the urgency now with which James must be convinced to abandon his support for Warbeck.

104: **Bishop Fox** = the Bishop of Durham had been sent north to secure the border castle of Norham against the expected incursion by the Scottish.

104-6: **Our news...dispatch** = ie. the news from Scotland arrives too slowly: incorporeal flying messengers (**airy spirits**) would be preferable to those that wend so frustratingly slowly by land!

dispatch = speed.¹

107-9: **The Earl...Edward!** = according to Bacon, Henry began to consider executing the earl and laying the blame on the Spanish monarchs.

108-110: **Let him...Arthur** = according to Gibson, Henry here is trying to convince himself of the superiority of his son Arthur's claim to the throne: Clarence, as nephew to Edward IV, perhaps had a better claim, since Arthur is descended from Edward through his daughter, Elizabeth of York, a female.

Scene IV: James' army is besieging Norham Castle.

Ford conflates history in this scene: in mid-September 1496, James led the Scottish, with Warbeck present, into northern England for a very brief raid; it was later, after he had expelled Warbeck from Scotland, that James invaded

<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Enter King James, Perkin Warbeck, Earl of Crawford, Lord Dalyell, Heron, Astley, John A-Water, Sketon, and Soldiers.</i></p> <p>1 K. Ja. We <u>trifle</u> time against these castle-walls; 2 The English prelate will not <u>yield</u>: once more</p> <p>Give him a summons.</p> <p>4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Warb. See, the jolly <u>clerk</u> 11 Appears, <u>trimmed</u> like a <u>ruffian</u>!</p> <p>12 K. Ja. Bishop, yet 13 <u>Set ope the ports</u>, and to your lawful sovereign, 14 <u>Richard of York</u>, surrender up this castle, 15 And he will take thee to his grace; else <u>Tweed</u> 16 17 Shall overflow his banks with English blood, 18 And wash the sand that <u>céments</u> those hard stones 19 From their foundation.</p> <p>20 B. of Dur. Warlike King of Scotland, 21 <u>Vouchsafe</u> a few words from a man enforced 22 To lay his <u>book</u> aside, and clap on arms 23 Unsuitable to <u>my age</u> or my profession. 24 Courageous prince, consider on what grounds 25 You <u>rend</u> the face of peace, and break <u>a league</u> 26 With <u>a confederate king</u> that <u>courts your amity</u>, 27 For whom, too? for a vagabond, a straggler, 28 Not noted in the world by birth or name, 29 An obscure peasant, by the rage of hell 30 <u>Loosed</u> from his chains to set great kings at strife.</p> <p>31 32 What nobleman, what common man of note, 33 What ordinary subject hath come in, 34 Since first you footed on our territories, 35 To only feign a welcome? Children laugh at</p>	<p><i>England a second time, investing Norham Castle in August 1497. The siege portrayed in this scene is a combination of the two invasions.</i></p> <p><i>The Scottish used their famous 15,000-pound cannon, Mons Meg, at Norham Castle; this monster can still be seen at Edinburgh Castle.</i></p> <p>= waste.</p> <p>2-3: the Bishop of Durham, Richard Foxe, is inside the castle, managing its defense. <u>yield</u> = surrender.</p> <p>3: it was customary before battles of the era for the opposing sides to send heralds to each other, demanding surrender and offering conditions.</p> <p>= a trumpet or drum sounds for the purpose of requesting a meeting between the opposing sides.</p> <p>Entering Characters: the English defenders appear on the stage's rear balcony, which was frequently used to represent city or castle <u>walls</u>. <u>truncheon</u> = commander's baton.</p> <p>10-11: Warbeck mocks the bishop for playing soldier. <u>clerk</u> = clergyman.¹ = dressed² or armed.⁹ = lawless villain.¹</p> <p>= "open the castle gates". = ie. Warbeck. = Norham Castle is located on the River Tweed, the traditional eastern boundary between England and Scotland.</p> <p>= cement was stressed on its first syllable in this era.</p> <p>21ff: note how at no point will Durham address the fraud Warbeck directly. = permit. = ie. Bible. = Durham would have been about 48 years old.</p> <p>= tear, scratch. = an alliance. = ie. Henry. = "seeks to win your friendship".</p> <p>= set loose, released.</p> <p>32-35: What nobleman...welcome = Durham points out that not a single Englishman or woman has appeared to give even a sham welcome to Warbeck.</p>
--	--

36	Your proclamations, and the <u>wiser</u> pity So great a potentate's <u>abuse</u> by one	= ie. wiser people. 37: <i>abuse</i> = ill-usage. ¹ 37-38: <i>one...merely</i> = "one who deceives (<i>juggles</i>) you completely".
38	Who juggles merely with the <u>fawns</u> and youth Of an <u>instructed compliment</u> : such spoils, 40 Such slaughters as the rapine of your soldiers Already have committed, is enough 42 To shew your zeal <u>in a conceited justice</u> .	= servile treatment or favouring. ¹ = ie. Warbeck had to be taught how to behave in a princely manner. 42: "to demonstrate your enthusiasm for what you imagine to be a just cause" (Gibson, p. 289). ⁶
44	Yet, great king, wake not yet my master's vengeance But shake <u>that viper</u> off which gnaws your entrails. I and my fellow-subjects are resolved, 46 If you persist, to stand your utmost fury, Till our last blood drop from us. 48	= ie. Warbeck.
50	Warb. O, sir, lend <u>No ear to this traducer</u> of my honour! –	= the quarto prints " <i>Me ear to this seducer</i> ", which all the editors emend as shown; <i>traducer</i> = slanderer. ²
	What shall I call <u>thee</u> , thou gray-bearded scandal,	= Warbeck's use of <i>thee</i> to address the bishop is consistent with how a king would address any of his subjects; but he also uses it as a way to show contempt.
52	That kick'st against the sovereignty to which <u>Thou ow'st allegiance?</u> – Treason is bold-faced 54 And eloquent in mischief: sacred king, Be deaf to his known malice. 56	= meaning allegiance to himself, the legitimate king.
58	B. of Dur. [To James] Rather yield Unto those holy <u>motions</u> which inspire The sacred heart of an <u>anointed</u> body. 60 It is the <u>surest</u> policy in princes To govern well their own than seek encroachment 62 Upon another's right.	57f: Durham ignores Warbeck. = impulses. ² = monarchs were <i>anointed</i> with holy oil at their coronations. = safest, ie. best.
64	Craw. [Aside to Dalyell] The king is serious, Deep in his meditations.	63: James likely falls into a meditative pose at this point, with a short pause in dialogue.
68	Daly. [Aside to Crawford] Lift <u>them</u> up To Heaven, his <u>better genius</u> !	= ie. James' thoughts. = ie. similar to a "better angel". ¹
70	Warb. [To James] Can you <u>study</u> While such a devil raves? O, sir!	= ponder.
74	K. Ja. Well, bishop, You'll not be <u>drawn to mercy</u> ?	74: persuaded to surrender himself to James' mercy.
76	B. of Dur. <u>Conster</u> me In like case by a subject of your own:	76-77: "judge my actions by how you would expect one of your own subjects to behave in my situation." <i>Conster</i> = construe, a common alternate form.
78	My resolution's fixed: King James, be <u>counselled</u> , A greater fate waits on thee.	= advised. 79: the bishop hints that James has a brighter future in store

if he abandons the fraud Warbeck.

[*Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Soldiers
from the walls.*]

K. Ja. Forage through
The country; spare no prey of life or goods.

Warb. O, sir, then give me leave to yield to nature;
I am most miserable: had I been

Born what this clergyman would by defame
Baffle belief with, I had never sought
The truth of mine inheritance with rapes
Of women or of infants murdered, virgins
Deflowered, old men butchered, dwellings fired,
My land depopulated, and my people
Afflicted with a kingdom's devastation:
Shew more remorse, great king, or I shall never
Endure to see such havoc with dry eyes;
Spare, spare, my dear, dear England!

87: Anderson believes Warbeck may begin to weep here.
88-90: *had I...belief with* = ie. "if I really was what the
bishop says I am".
= defamation, slander.
= confound. = ie. would never have.

= burned.

= consideration, pity or regret.¹

87-98: *the first Scottish raid inflicted a great deal of violence on the English countryside; supposedly, Warbeck expressed regret over this harsh behavior, and begged the king to limit any further suffering on the English populace. This attitude was considered unprincely, and the chroniclers mocked him viciously for this.*

100-7 (below): annoyed, James embarrasses Warbeck by pointing out that not a single Englishman has turned out in his support. His sarcasm is quite a sudden reversal from the deference shown him to this point.

K. Ja. You fool your piety
Ridiculously careful of an interest

100-2: *You fool...possesseth* = Warbeck is making an ass of himself, solicitous as he is for the welfare of (*careful of*) a land that belongs to someone else!

fool your piety = "make your own compassion look foolish".⁵

Another man possesseth. Where's your faction?
Shrewdly the bishop guessed of your adherents,

= supporting part of the population.

103: "the smart bishop has correctly calculated your level of support."

= elected official; but can also mean "citizen".¹

When not a petty burgess of some town,
No, not a villager hath yet appeared
In your assistance: that should make 'ee whine,
And not your country's sufferance, as you term it.

106-7: *that should...term it* = "you should be complaining about the fact that not one Englishman has joined your side, rather than about the suffering of your country, as you call (*term*) it." James' use of *whine* expresses his disdain.

sufferance = suffering.⁹

Daly. The king is angry.

Craw. And the passionate duke
Effeminately dolent.

= emotional.

112: grieving or mourning in an unmanly manner; they don't think much of Warbeck's sympathy for the English victims of the raid.

Warb. The experience
In former trials, sir, both of mine own
Or other princes cast out of their thrones,
Have so acquainted me how misery

118	Is destitute of friends or of relief, That I can easily submit to taste	
120	<u>Lowest reproof</u> without contempt or words.	119-120: Warbeck means that he is easily able to stand even the most insulting rebuke (Lowest reproof) without responding in kind.
122	K. Ja. An humble-minded man!	120: James is highly sarcastic.
124		
	<i>Enter Frion.</i>	
126	Now, what <u>intelligence</u>	= news.
	Speaks Master Secretary Frion?	
128		
	Frion. Henry	
130	Of England hath in open field o'erthrown	
	<u>The armies</u> who opposed him in the right	= ie. the Cornish rebels.
132	Of this young prince.	
134	K. Ja. <u>His subsidies</u> , you mean: –	= ie. further sarcasm: "(who opposed) his subsidies"; James correctly surmises that the Cornish did not rise up in order to support Warbeck, but rather to show their displeasure at the heavy taxes Henry had imposed on them.
	More, if you have it?	135: "what other news do you have?"
136		
	Frion. Howard, Earl of Surrey,	
138	Backed by twelve earls and barons of the north,	
	An hundred knights and gentlemen of name,	
140	And twenty thousand soldiers, is at hand	
	To raise your siege. <u>Brooke</u> , with a goodly navy,	= Brooke is Sir Robert Willoughby, the first Baron Willoughby de Broke (1452-1502). Willoughby probably fought with Henry at Bosworth, and subsequently served under the king in various capacities, including Admiral of the Fleet beginning in 1490. He was in command of the fleet when news arrived in London that Warbeck was threatening the coast of Cornwall.
142	Is admiral at sea; and Dawbney follows	
	With an <u>unbroken army for a second</u> .	= a wholly intact. ¹ = in support.
144		
	Warb. Tis false! they come to side with us.	
146		
	K. Ja. Retreat;	147f: James realizes the hopelessness of their situation.
148	We shall not find them stones and walls to cope with. –	148: ie. "fighting these armies would be more difficult than taking on the stones of a castle in a siege."
	Yet, Duke of York, <u>for such thou sayst thou art</u> ,	= Wow! James sneeringly switches pronouns, no longer using the respectful you towards Warbeck.
150	I'll try thy fortune to the height: to Surrey,	150: I'll try...height = "I will test your luck to the utmost degree that I can".
	By <u>Marchmont</u> , I will send a brave <u>defiance</u>	= ie. James' herald or messenger. = challenge.
152	<u>For single combat</u> ; <u>once</u> a king will venture	152: For single combat = James will challenge Surrey to fight one-on-one to determine the winner of the campaign – an old chivalric notion. But James isn't crazy; he knows his army can't win a stand-up fight against the English; but if he wins the single combat, he can get something for Scotland for his troubles (see Act IV.i.45f for his conditions). Additionally, James is only 23 at this time, in the prime

of his fighting youth; Surrey would have been 53 – not necessarily a fair fight!

The possibility of a single-combat between James and Surrey was mentioned by Gainsford.

once = "for this one time only".⁵

152-3: **venture His person** = "risk his own life".

153: **earl** = a disyllable here: EAR-al.¹¹

153-4: **with condition...blood** = by resolving the war via single combat, they can avoid the death and wounding of so many soldiers.

bold = brave.

157-160: Warbeck, not an otherwise particularly sympathetic character, at least recognizes the fight should be his.

= "promote me to this honour".

= "is the cause of"⁵ or "is involved in".^{6,9}

163: **softly** = quietly.⁶

163-4: another scene ends with rhyming couplet.

154 His person to an earl, with condition
Of spilling lesser blood: Surrey is bold,
And James resolved.

156

158 **Warb.** O, rather, gracious sir,
Create me to this glory, since my cause
160 Doth interest this fair quarrel; valued least,
I am his equal.

162 **K. Ja.** I will be the man. –
March softly off: "where victory can reap
164 A harvest crowned with triumph, toil is cheap."
166 [Exeunt.]

END OF ACT III.

ACT IV.

SCENE I.

*The English Camp near Ayton,
on the Borders.*

*Enter Earl of Surrey, Bishop of Durham,
Soldiers, with drums and colours.*

1 **Sur.** Are all our braving enemies shrunk back,
2 Hid in the fogs of their distempered climate,

Not daring to behold our colours wave
4 In spite of this infected air? Can they
Look on the strength of Cundrestine defaced?

6 The glory of Hedon-hall devastated? that

Of Edington cast down? the pile of Fulden
8 O'erthrown? and this the strongest of their forts,
Old Ayton-castle, yielded and demolished?

Scene I: **Ayton** is a Scottish town, located about 6 miles north of the border town Berwick-upon-Tweed.

In 1497, the Earl of Surrey arrived at the Borders region with an army, causing James to retreat from his siege at Norham Castle. Surrey retaliated with a raid into Scotland of his own.

Entering Characters: thanks to the timely arrival of **Surrey's** army to relieve **Durham**, the English have not only forced the Scottish forces back across the border, but they have also raided into Scotland themselves, attacking and destroying property, and without much pushback from James.

colours = flags and pennants.

Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey (1443-1524), led a long and remarkable life, which was distinguished by loyalty to whomever held the crown at a given moment. He supported and served Edward IV for many years, and fought with Richard at Bosworth. Imprisoned by Henry for being on the losing side in the battle, he spent three years in the Tower. Surrey refused to leave the Tower when given an opportunity to escape and join the Simnel rebellion in 1487. Recognizing that Surrey could be useful, Henry released him in 1489, and Surrey loyally served Henry for the rest of the king's life (it should be noted that Henry kept possession of most of the lands that Surrey had forfeited for fighting against him at Bosworth).

After successfully putting down a rebellion in Yorkshire in about 1490, Surrey was entrusted for many years with the security of the border with Scotland. Astoundingly, Surrey was aged 70 when he organized and led the English army that destroyed the Scottish forces and killed James IV at the Battle of Flodden in 1513. Surrey remained active in court, serving Henry's son Henry VIII for many more years, before finally dying at about the age of 81 in 1524.

= challenging or defying.²

2: Surrey disparages Scottish weather. The play will repeatedly reference the unhealthy climate of the north.

distempered = inclement, unwholesome.¹

= in defiance of or notwithstanding the corrupted air:¹ another comment on Scotland's atrocious weather.

5-9: Surrey, in his taunting, lists a number of Scottish castles his army has captured or destroyed in Berwickshire.

6: **Hedon Hall** = mentioned above at Act III.ii.176.

devasted = devastated, laid waste: **devaste** has its own entry, distinct from that for **devastate**, in the OED.
= small castle.¹

= surrendered.

<p>10</p> <p>12</p> <p>14</p> <p>16</p> <p>18</p> <p>20</p> <p>22</p> <p>24</p> <p>26</p> <p>28</p> <p>30</p> <p>32</p> <p>34</p> <p>36</p> <p>38</p> <p>40</p> <p>42</p> <p>44</p>	<p><u>And yet not peep abroad?</u> The Scots are bold,</p> <p>Hardy in battle; but it seems the cause They undertake, <u>considerèd</u>, appears Unjointed in the frame on't.</p> <p>B. of Dur. Noble Surrey, Our royal master's wisdom is at all times His fortune's harbinger; for when he draws His sword to threaten war, his <u>providence</u> <u>Settles on</u> peace, the crowning of an empire.</p> <p>[A trumpet within.]</p> <p>Sur. <u>Rank all</u> in order: 'tis a herald's sound; Some message from King James: keep a fixed station.</p> <p><i>Enter Marchmont and another in Heralds' coats.</i></p> <p>March. From Scotland's <u>awful</u> majesty we come Unto the English general.</p> <p>Sur. To me? Say on.</p> <p>March. Thus, then; the waste and prodigal <u>Effusiõn</u> of so much <u>guiltless</u> blood As in two <u>potent</u> armies of necessity Must glut the earth's dry womb, <u>his</u> sweet compassion Hath <u>studied</u> to prevent; for which to thee, Great Earl of Surrey, in a single fight He offers his own royal person; fairly Proposing these conditions only, that If victory conclude our master's right, The <u>earl</u> shall deliver for his ransom</p> <p>The town of <u>Berwick</u> to him, with the <u>fishgarths</u>;</p>	<p>= the extremely common collocation peep abroad literally meant "to steal a look in public", with the sense of the modern, "show one's face"; it was used in various expressions to derisively describe cowardice or fear. Ford's formula here (his own invention) seems to be a more immediate predecessor to today's "not a peep", in which peep is used to refer to speaking up, rather than looking.</p> <p>= "when one thinks about it".¹</p> <p>13: lacking cohesion;¹ with frame, perhaps a "construction" metaphor.</p> <p>Lines 5-9 (above): it is fascinating to see how closely Ford adopted the language of Gainsford in describing the list of castles razed by Surrey's army (p. 86; bold-faced words are those used by Ford): "...the Earl of Surrey...entered Scotland, defaced the Castle of Cundrestins, devasted the Tower Hedonhall, undermined the Tower of Edington, overthrew the pile of Fulden", and "overthrew and demolished"... "Haiton Castle".</p> <p>16-17: Our...harbinger = Henry's sound decisions always lead to success. = foresight or fate.¹ = leads to or secures.</p> <p>= arrange the army.²</p> <p>Entering Character: Marchmont is the Scottish herald, or messenger. Pickburn explains that heralds wore distinct sleeveless tunics with their masters' coat of arms depicted on the front.</p> <p>= awe-inspiring (as in "full of awe").</p> <p>= spilling. = innocent. = powerful.¹ = ie. King James'. = endeavored.</p> <p>42: ie. if James emerges the winner. = again, earl is pronounced with 2 syllables.</p> <p>44: Berwick = Berwick-upon-Tweed, located near the English border with Scotland, was a frequent pawn in the</p>
---	---	--

46 If Surrey shall prevail, the king will pay
A thousand pounds down present for his freedom,
48 And silence further arms: so speaks King James.

50 **Sur.** So speaks King James! so like a king 'a speaks.
Heralds, the English general returns

52 A sensible devotion from his heart,
His very soul, to this unfellowed grace:
For let the king know, gentle heralds, truly,
54 How his descent from his great throne, to honour

56 A stranger subject with so high a title
As his compeer in arms, hath conquered more

58 Than any sword could do; for which – my loyalty
Respected – I will serve his virtues ever
In all humility: but Berwick, say,
60 Is none of mine to part with; "in affairs
Of princes subjects cannot traffic rights
62 Inherent to the crown." My life is mine,
That I dare freely hazard; and – with pardon

64 To some unbribed vainglory – if his majesty
Shall taste a change of fate, his liberty

66 Shall meet no articles. If I fall, falling
So bravely, I refer me to his pleasure

68 Without condition; and for this dear favour,

70 Say, if not countermanded, I will cease
Hostility, unless provoked.

72 **March.** This answer
We shall relate unpartially.

74 **B. of Dur.** [To Marchmont] With favour,
76 Pray have a little patience. –
[Aside to Surrey] Sir, you find
78 By these gay flourishes how wearied travail
Inclines a willing rest; here's but a prologue,
80 However confidently uttered, meant

many wars between the two nations.

fishgarths = enclosures in the sea for penning in fish.¹

= ie. in ready, or present, money.^{1,5}

= ie. and end making war on England.

49-59: **so like...humility** = Surrey is honoured that James,
a king, should offer to meet Surrey in single combat.

= heartfelt.¹

= unequaled favour.

= noble.⁶

= ie. James is deigning to fight one below his station; single
combat, like dueling, generally should only take place
between persons of similar rank.

= foreign.

56: **compeer** = fellow, equal.¹

56-57: **hath conquered...could do** = Surrey is "won
over" by James' chivalrous proposal.

= ie. loyalty to his own king (ie. Henry).

= recognized,¹ ie. excepted.

= trade in, or buy and sell.¹

63: **hazard** = risk.

63-64: **with pardon...vainglory** = "excuse me for
saying something so boastful".

64-66: **if his...articles** = Surrey delicately raises the possi-
bility James may lose to him, in which case the king would
be released unconditionally. Note that single combat need
not lead to the death of one of the participants; yielding
would be sufficient to end it.

66-68: **If I fall...condition** = if James defeats Surrey, the
king may dispose of him as he wishes.

bravely = illustriously.⁵

= valuable.

69-70: unless Henry orders him to continue prosecuting
war on Scotland, Surrey will immediately cease further
hostilities, pending the outcome of the single-combat.

75-76: Durham asks the herald to wait a moment.

77-81: **you find...peace** = with good psychological insight,
Durham suggests that this offer of single combat from James
is actually a sign of how tired he and his army are already of
war, and may even be a subtle invitation to treat for peace.

gay flourishes = showy displays.^{1,5}

travail = typically meaning both work and travel.

82 For some ensuing acts of peace: consider
 83 The time of year, unseasonableness of weather,
 84 Charge, barrenness of profit; and occasion
 85 Presents itself for honourable treaty,

86 Which we may make good use of. I will back,
 87 As sent from you, in point of noble gratitude
 88 Unto King James, with these his heralds: you

89 Shall shortly hear from me, my lord, for order
 90 Of breathing or proceeding; and King Henry,
 91 Doubt not, will thank the service.

92 *Sur.* [*Aside to Durham*] To your wisdom,
 93 Lord Bishop, I refer it.

94 *B. of Dur.* [*Aside to Surrey*] Be it so, then.

95 *Sur.* Heralds, accept this chain and these few crowns.

96 *March.* Our duty, noble general.

97 *B. of Dur.* In part
 98 Of retribution for such princely love,
 99 My lord the general is pleased to shew
 100 The king your master his sincerest zeal,
 101 By further treaty, by no common man:
 102 I will myself return with you.

103 *Sur.* Y' oblige
 104 My faithfulest affections t'ee, Lord Bishop.

105 *March.* All happiness attend your lordship!

106 [Exit with Herald.]

107 *Sur.* Come, friends

108 And fellow-soldiers; we, I doubt, shall meet
 109 No enemies but woods and hills to fight with;
 110 Then 'twere as good to feed and sleep at home:
 111 We may be free from danger, not secure.

Inclines = makes one desire.
ensuing acts (line 81) = ie. following acts: in addition to its regular meaning of "deeds", *acts* is used with *prologue* in line 79 for a nice stage metaphor.

81-85: *consider...use of* = Durham lists all the reasons the Scottish no doubt would be pleased to wrap up this conflict, which the English should take advantage of; of course, this tally of reasons could just as well apply to the English.

Charge = expense.
barrenness of profit = absence of tangible benefit.
occasion = an opportunity.

85-87: *I will...heralds* = Durham will return (*back*) to James with the herald.

in point of noble gratitude = under the pretext of showing thankfulness for James' honourable behaviour towards them.

88-89: *for order...proceeding* = with instructions to either remain at rest (*breathing* = resting) or resume hostilities.

85-90: Durham's clever idea to go with the herald is presumably a direct result of Henry instructing him to find a way to meet with James; the Spanish agent Hialas, we remember, had requested that Henry send an envoy to Scotland to help him persuade James to make peace: see Act III.iii.34-42.

= defer.

97: heralds and messengers usually received a payment from the recipients of their errands.

= repayment.

= ie. Surrey.

= ordinary, low-ranked.

= ie. "to ye".

115-9: Surrey is confident that whatever Durham is up to, it will lead to the end of the war with Scotland.

= suspect.

= "without being overconfident".¹

[Exeunt.]

ACT IV, SCENE II.

The Scottish Camp.

Enter Perkin Warbeck and Frion.

1 **Warb.** Frion, O, Frion, all my hopes of glory
2 Are at a stand! the Scottish king grows dull,

Frosty, and wayward, since this Spanish agent

4 Hath mixed discourses with him; they are private.
I am not called to council now: – confusion

6 On all his crafty shrugs! I feel the fabric

Of my designs are tottering.

8 **Frion.** Henry's policies
10 Stir with too many engines.

12 **Warb.** Let his mines,
Shaped in the bowels of the earth, blow up
14 Works raised for my defence, yet can they never

Toss into air the freedom of my birth,
16 Or disavow my blood Plantagenet's:

I am my father's son still. – But, O, Frion,

18 When I bring into count with my disasters
My wife's compartment, my Kate's, my life's,
20 Then, then my frailty feels an earthquake. Mischief

Scene II: *the Scottish army was camped only a mile away from the English at Ayton.*

2: **at a stand** = predecessor to "at a standstill".
dull = sluggish in action or interest.

3: **Frosty** = ie. cold in his treatment of Perkin.
wayward = intractable, capricious.¹
the Spanish agent = ie. Hialas, whom we met in Act III.iii in Henry's court.

Ayala, the real Spanish agent, had arrived in Scotland in 1496; he was actually enroute at the time James raided England.

= in close conference with each other.
= "may ruin fall": a curse.

6: **shrugs** = ie. of the shoulders, referring to Hialas' craftiness.⁵
fabric = ediface.¹

= plans. = lack of agreement between subject and verb
(**fabric...are**) was common in this era's works.

9-10: Frion is impressed with Henry's ability to implement multiple concurrent strategies to achieve any particular goal.

engine = means, instruments,¹ or plots.⁶

12-23 (below): as Warbeck delivers this speech, his agitation should significantly and visibly increase.

12-14: **Let his...defense** = literally, "even if Henry plants underground mines which destroy my defensive fortifications", ie. "even if Henry successfully defeats all efforts to promote me".

= "blow up", concluding Warbeck's undermining metaphor.
= deny.¹

ie. "I am the son of a king, hence I am a king too": proverbial.

still = always.

= reckon up.²
= copartnership.¹

20: **my frailty...earthquake** = metaphorically, Warbeck suffers an emotional upheaval; the expression "to feel an earthquake" was a common one.

frailty = body.

22 Damn Henry's plots! I will be England's king,
 Or let my aunt of Burgundy report
 24 My fall in the attempt deserved our ancestors!

26 **Frion.** You grow too wild in passion: if you will
 Appear a prince indeed, confine your will
 To moderation.

28 **Warb.** What a saucy rudeness
 30 Prompts this distrust! "If?" "If I will appear?"
 "Appear a prince!" death throttle such deceits
 32 Even in their birth of utterance! cursèd cozenage
 Of trust! Ye make me mad: 'twere best, it seems,
 34 That I should turn impostor to myself,

Be mine own counterfeit, belie the truth

36 Of my dear mother's womb, the sacred bed
 Of a prince murdered and a living baffled!

38 **Frion.** Nay, if you have no ears to hear, I have
 40 No breath to spend in vain.

42 **Warb.** Sir, sir, take heed!
 Gold and the promise of promotion rarely
 44 Fail in temptation.

46 **Frion.** Why to me this?

48 **Warb.** Nothing.
 Speak what you will; we are not sunk so low
 50 But your advice may piece again the heart

Which many cares have broken: you were wont
 52 In all extremities to talk of comfort;

Have ye none left now? I'll not interrupt ye.
 54 Good, bear with my distractions! If King James
 Deny us dwelling here, next whither must I?
 56 I preethee, be not angry.

58 **Frion.** Sir, I told ye
 Of letters come from Ireland; how the Cornish
 60 Stomach their last defeat, and humbly sue

Mischief = read as "may mischief", ie. "may calamity".

= worthy of.⁹

25-27: once again, Warbeck must be chastised for letting his emotions get the best of him; see Act II.i.112-3.

29-37: Warbeck's frustrations start to get the better of him.

= deceit.

= not be true to himself, ie. pretend he is not the rightful king of England!

35-36: **belie...womb** = disavow the fact that his mother was Elizabeth Woodville, wife of Edward IV.

36-37: **the sacred...murthered** = it was theorized that the two young princes were smothered in their beds; this was how Shakespeare described their deaths in *Richard III*.

37: ie. "of one prince (Edward) murdered and the other, living one (Richard, aka Warbeck), disgraced or treated shamefully (**baffled**)."²

= ie. "if you will not listen to me".

43-44: Warbeck bitterly hints at his surprise that even Frion is turning on him.

46: "why are you telling me this?"

48-56 (below): his passion finally spent, Warbeck regains control of himself, and is apologetic to Frion, on whom he still heavily relies.

= ie. piece together.

51-52: **you were...comfort** = "no matter how bad our situation, you have heretofore always been able to find some way to comfort me."

wont = accustomed.

= elliptically, "good sir".⁶ = mental disturbances.

= "to where can I go next?"

= ie. "I implore thee".

59-63: **how the...gladly** = supposedly, the Cornish so resent (**stomach**) their defeat at the hands of Henry's army,

62 That with such forces as you could partake
 You would in person land in Cornwall, where
 Thousands will entertain your title gladly.

64

66 **Warb.** Let me embrace thee, hug thee; th'ast revived
 My comforts; if my cousin-king will fail,
 Our cause will never.

68

70 *Enter John A-Water, Heron, Astley, and Sketon.*

72 Welcome, my tried friends!
 You keep your brains awake in our defence. –
 Frion, advise with them of these affairs,
 74 In which be wondrous secret; I will listen
 What else concerns us here: be quick and wary.

76

78 [Exit Warbeck.]

80 **Ast.** Ah, sweet young prince! – Secretary, my fellow-
 counsellors and I have consulted, and jump all in one
 opinion directly; an if this Scotch garboils do not
 82 fadge to our minds, we will pell-mell run amongst
 the Cornish choughs presently and in a trice.

84

86 **Sket.** Tis but going to sea and leaping ashore, cut ten
 or twelve thousand unnecessary throats, fire seven or
 eight towns, take half a dozen cities, get into the market-
 88 place, crown him Richard the Fourth, and the business is
 finished.

90

92 **J. a-Wat.** I grant ye, quoth I, so far forth as men may
 do, no more than men may do; for it is good to consider
 when consideration may be to the purpose, otherwise –
 94 still you shall pardon me – little said is soon amended.

96 **Frion.** Then you conclude the Cornish action surest?

that they now are begging for Warbeck to come to Cornwall,
 where he can expect the natives will receive him as the true
 king (*entertain...gladly*).

with such...partake (line 61) = either, "with whomever
 you can get to accompany you",⁹ or "with any troops that
 you can raise".⁶

65: note that Warbeck switches here to addressing Frion
 from the formal *you* to the affectionate *thee*.
 = ie. James.

= inform.²

79ff (below): the advisors, already informed of the letter
 mentioned by Frion above, voice their unanimous approval
 of the plan to take Warbeck – and their fortunes – to
 Cornwall.

80-81: *jump all...directly* = ie. "we are in agreement".
 = if. = usually emended to *these*. = tumults.³
 = succeed, come off.¹ = "to our satisfaction". = in disorder.

83: *choughs* = a *chough* is a chattering bird of the crow
 family, commonly seen on the sea-cliffs of Cornwall,^{1,5}
 hence its application to the Cornish;¹² but also with a pun on
chuffs, which means "rustics" or "peasants".^{1,6}

in a trice = without delay, immediately. This phrase, and
 its predecessor *at a trice*, go back to the 15th and early 16th
 centuries.¹

= ie. "this entire enterprise is comprised of nothing more
 than", ie. "it will be as easy as".
 = burn.

91: *I grant ye* = ie. "I acknowledge".¹

quoth I = ie. "say I".

91-92: *so far...may do* = men can only do what they
 can do.

= an old and common expression, meaning that the less one
 dwells on a bad situation, the sooner it will be forgotten.

96: now that we know how little Frion thinks of these men,
 his dissembling flattery and deference to them is quite
 funny.

98 **Heron.** We do so, and doubt not but to thrive abundantly.
– Ho, my masters, had we known of the commotion
100 When we set sail out of Ireland, the land had been ours
ere this time.

102 **Sket.** Pish, pish! 'tis but forbearing being an earl or a
104 duke a month or two longer. I say, and say it again, if
the work go not on apace, let me never see new fashion
106 more. I warrant ye, I warrant ye; we will have it so,
and so it shall be.

108 **Ast.** This is but a cold phlegmatic country, not stirring
110 enough for men of spirit. Give me the heart of England
for my money!

112 **Sket.** A man may batten there in a week only with
114 hot loaves and butter, and a lusty cup of muscadine and

sugar at breakfast, though he make never a meal all the
116 month after.

118 **J. a-Wat.** Surely, when I bore office I found by
experience that to be much troublesome was to be much
120 wise and busy: I have observed how filching and
bragging has been the best service in these last wars;
122 and therefore conclude peremptorily on the design in
England. If things and things may fall out, as who can
124 tell what or how – but the end will shew it.

126 **Frion.** Resolved like men of judgment! Here to linger
More time is but to lose it: cheer the prince
128 And haste him on to this; on this depends
Fame in success, or glory in our ends.

130 [Exeunt.]

ACT IV, SCENE III.

Another part of the Scottish Camp.

Enter King James, the Bishop of Durham, and Hialas.

1 **Hial.** France, Spain, and Germany combine a league

2 Of amity with England: nothing wants
For settling peace through Christendom, but love

= rebellion, ie. the Cornish uprising.

= before.

= putting off becoming.

104-5: **if the work...apace** = ie. if this scheme does not pan
out quickly.

= we remember that Sketon is a tailor.

= assure, guarantee.

109-110: **This is...spirit** = yet another complaint about the
Scottish climate.

phlegmatic = apathetic, sluggish.¹

= grow fat.¹ = ie. eating only.

114: **hot loaves and butter** = this was the stereotypical
breakfast of tailors. Dyce's comment is worth quoting: "*Our
ancestors must have found something peculiarly amusing in
a tailor's breakfast to justify the comic writers in these
eternal references to it*" (p. 183).¹¹

muscadine = a wine.

115-6: **though he...after** = "even if he fasts for the entire
next month."

= stealing or pilfering.¹

= ie. in favour of.

= common expression, meaning "if one thing or another".⁵

= ie. in Scotland.

Entering Characters: **Durham** and **Hialas** together turn up
the pressure on James to abandon his support for Warbeck.

1: **Germany** = ie. the Holy Roman Empire.

1-2: **combine...amity** = have formed an alliance; see
the note at line 8 below.

= lacks.

4	Between the British monarchs, James and Henry.	
6	B. of Dur. The English merchants, sir, have been received With general procession into Antwerp;	6-7: ie. English trade with the Flemish has been resumed. <i>In the years when Warbeck was still in Flanders, Henry had punished the archduke and Holy Roman Emperor for their refusal to force Margaret to turn Warbeck out by banning all commercial activity with the Flemish; this of course hurt the English as much as the Flemish, and led to rioting in London.</i>
8	The <u>emperor</u> confirms the <u>combination</u> .	= ie. Maximilian, the Holy Roman Emperor. = alliance. <i>Henry has joined the Holy League, which included the pope, Ferdinand and the Holy Roman Emperor, as well as Milan and Venice, to drive France out of Italy, which the allies in fact managed to do in 1496.</i>
10	Hial. The king of Spain <u>resolves</u> a marriage	= is determined on.
12	For Katherine his daughter with Prince Arthur.	<i>11: Katherine of Aragon finally arrived in England and married Arthur in 1501. The union was one of historic significance: the couple's great-grandson, James VI of Scotland, ascended the English throne in 1603, uniting the two countries.</i>
14	B. of Dur. France courts this early contract.	
16	Hial. What can hinder <u>A quietness</u> in England? –	= tranquility, ¹ ie. peace.
18	B. of Dur. But your <u>suffrage</u> To such a silly <u>creature</u> , mighty sir,	18-21: Durham finishes Hialas' question. 18-19: But your...creature = "except for your support (<u>suffrage</u>) ¹ of this foolish and insignificant <i>thing</i> ". creature = reprehensible individual, or dependent. ¹
20	As is but in effect an apparition, A shadow, a <u>mere</u> trifle?	20-21: briefly, "who is virtually without substance, an utterly (<u>mere</u>) worthless person?"
22	Hial. To this union	
24	The good of both the church and commonwealth Invite 'ee.	25: note how Ford carelessly lets the Spanish envoy Hialas slip into local dialect with 'ee.
26	B. of Dur. To this unity, a mystery	
28	Of providence points out a greater blessing For both these nations than our human reason	
30	Can search into. King Henry hath a daughter, The <u>Princess Margaret</u> ; I need not urge	30-37: King Henry...kingdoms = Durham dangles Henry's daughter Margaret as a possible wife to further tempt James to reject Warbeck Princess Margaret = born in 1489, Margaret was Henry's second child. She was six years old when James attacked England.
32	What honour, what felicity can follow On such affinity 'twixt two Christian kings	
34	<u>Inleagued</u> by ties of blood; but sure I am, If you, sir, ratify the peace proposed,	= united.
36	<u>I dare both motion</u> and <u>effect</u> this marriage For <u>weal</u> of both the kingdoms.	= "I would dare to propose". = bring about. = the welfare. <i>James would eventually marry Margaret in 1503, when she was 14.</i>
38	K. Ja. Dar'st thou, lord bishop?	

40	B. of Dur. Put it <u>to trial</u> , royal James, by sending	= to the test.
42	Some noble personage to the English court	
44	By way of embassy.	
46	Hial. Part of the business Shall suit my mediation.	
48	K. Ja. Well; what Heaven Hath pointed out to be, must be: you two	48-66: James gives a speech that would serve as an excellent model for one looking to apologize for an action that was regrettable yet necessary.
50	Are ministers, I hope, of blessed fate.	
52	But herein only I will stand acquitted, No blood of innocents shall buy my peace:	= call. ¹
54	For Warbeck, as you <u>nick</u> him, came to me, <u>Commended</u> by the <u>states</u> of Christendom,	= assured to be worthy of approval. ¹ = nations.
56	A prince, though in distress; his fair demeanour, Lovely behaviour, <u>unappallèd</u> spirit,	= courageous. ¹
58	Spoke him not base in blood, however <u>clouded</u> . <u>The brute beasts</u> have both rocks and caves to <u>fly to</u> ,	= veiled or cloaked (by circumstances). ¹ = ie. "animals". = flee to (for safe haven).
60	And <u>men the altars of the church</u> ; to us He came for refuge: "kings come near in nature	= reference to the right of criminals to find sanctuary in certain churches.
62	Unto the gods in being touched with pity." Yet, noble friends, <u>his mixture with our blood</u> ,	= by marrying Katherine, who was, like James, descended from James I, Warbeck is <i>mixing</i> with royal blood.
64	Even with our own, shall no way interrupt A general peace; only I will dismiss him	
66	From my protection, throughout my dominions, In safety; but not ever to return.	
68	Hial. You are a just king.	
70	B. of Dur. Wise, and herein happy.	
72	K. Ja. Nor will we <u>dally</u> in affairs of weight: Huntley, lord bishop, shall <u>with</u> you to England	= delay. ¹ = ie. go with.
74	Ambassador from us: we will throw down Our weapons; peace on all sides! Now <u>repair</u>	= "I must go".
76	Unto our council; we will soon be with you.	
78	Hial. <u>Delay shall question no dispatch</u> ; Heaven crown it.	= "delay will not put a prompt settlement into jeopardy" (Gibson, p. 301). ⁶
80	[<i>Exeunt Bishop of Durham and Hialas.</i>]	
82	K. Ja. <u>A league with Ferdinand!</u> a marriage	= "an alliance with Spain!"
84	With English Margaret! a free release From <u>restitution</u> for the late affronts!	83-84: <i>a free release...affronts</i> = "and I won't have to pay <i>restitution</i> for the damage I have caused by my raid of England!" Henry will later chide Surrey for granting James this concession.
86	Cessation from hostility! and all For Warbeck, not delivered, but dismissed! We could not wish it better. – Dalyell!	85-86: <i>and all...dismissed</i> = and to get all this, James does not even have to turn Warbeck over to Henry – he need only boot him out of Scotland!
88		
90	<i>Enter Lord Dalyell.</i>	
	Daly. Here sir.	

92	K. Ja. Are Huntley and his daughter sent for?	
94	Daly.	Sent for
96	And come, my lord.	
98	K. Ja. Say to <u>the English prince</u> ,	= ie. Warbeck.
100	We want his company.	
102	Daly. He is at hand, sir.	
104	<i>Enter Perkin Warbeck, Lady Katherine, Jane, Frion, Heron, Sketon, John A-Water, and Astley.</i>	
106	K. Ja. Cousin, our <u>bounty</u> , favours, gentleness,	106-127: James gives another model speech of apology, this time to Warbeck. bounty = generosity. = "risk to myself".
108	Our benefits, the <u>hazard of our person</u> ,	
110	Our people's lives, our land, hath evidenced How much we have engaged on your behalf:	
112	How trivial and how dangerous our hopes Appear, how fruitless our attempts in war; How <u>windy</u> , rather <u>smoky</u> , your assurance Of <u>party</u> shews, we might in vain repeat:	112-3: "how illusory were your guarantees that the English would rise in your support". Warbeck's assurances were not just all talk (windy), but also misled James by clouding his judgment (smoky). party = side, faction, ² or support. ⁵
114	But now obedience to the mother church,	114: allusion to Pope Alexander's efforts to recruit the states of Europe to join the Holy League, suggests Gibson. = welfare.
116	A father's care upon his country's <u>weal</u> ,	
118	The dignity of state, direct our wisdom To seal an oath of peace through Christendom; To which <u>we are</u> sworn already: [i]t is you Must <u>only</u> seek new fortunes in the world,	= pronounce as <i>we're</i> . = alone. ⁶
120	And find an harbour elsewhere. As I promised On your arrival, you have met no <u>usage</u>	= treatment.
122	Deserves repentance in your being here; But yet I must live master of mine own:	123: a monarch must ultimately be free to act as is necessary to serve himself and his country; no external obligations can be permitted to supersede this mandate.
124	However, what is necessary for you At your departure, I am well content	
126	You be accommodated with, provided Delay prove not my enemy.	
128	Warb. It shall not,	
130	Most glorious prince. The <u>fame</u> of my <u>designs</u>	129-144: to his credit, Warbeck is graceful in his response. = repute. = plans, goals.
132	Soars higher than report of ease and <u>sloth</u>	= ie. sloth.
134	Can aim at: I acknowledge all your favours Boundless and singular; am only wretched	
136	In words as well as means to thank the grace That flowed so liberally. Two empires firmly You're lord of, – Scotland and Duke Richard's heart: My claim to mine inheritance shall sooner	
138	Fail than my life to serve you, best of kings;	

140 And, witness Edward's blood in me! I am
 More loth to part with such a great example
 Of virtue than all other mere respects.

142 But, sir, my last suit is, you will not force
 From me what you have given, – this chaste lady,
 144 Resolved on all extremes.

146 **Kath.** I am your wife;
 No human power can or shall divorce
 148 My faith from duty.

150 **Warb.** Such another treasure
 The earth is bankrout of.

152 **K. Ja.** I gave her, cousin,
 154 And must avow the gift; will add withal
A furniture becoming her high birth
 156 And unsuspected constancy; provide
For your attendance: we will part good friends.
 158

[Exit James with Lord Dalyell.]

160 **Warb.** The Tudor hath been cunning in his plots:

162 His Fox of Durham would not fail at last.
 But what? our cause and courage are our own:
 164 Be men, my friends, and let our cousin-king
 See how we follow fate as willingly
 166 As malice follows us. Y'are all resolved
 For the west parts of England?

168 **All.** Cornwall, Cornwall!

170 **Frion.** The inhabitants expect you daily.

172 **Warb.** Cheerfully
 174 Draw all our ships out of the harbour, friends;
 Our time of stay doth seem too long, we must
 176 Prevent intelligence; about it suddenly.

178 **All.** A prince, a prince, a prince!

180 [Exeunt Heron, Sketon, Astley, and John A-Water.]

182 **Warb.** Dearest, admit not into thy pure thoughts
 The least of scruples, which may charge their softness

140-1: **a great...virtue** = meaning James.
 141: ie. James' **virtue** is what has impressed Warbeck the most.
mere respects = individual consideration.¹

144: "(who is) determined to stick with me through thick and thin."

= affirm. = moreover.¹
 = belongings, dress, etc.
 = "undoubted faithfulness (to you)."
 = "servants to attend you."⁶

159: *thus ends James' part in our play; the real James never admitted he had been deceived, but rather, to the end of his life, always referred to Warbeck as the Duke of York.*

= ie. Henry, again not referring to him as "king"; Henry was the first in the Tudor line, succeeding the last of the Plantagenets, Richard III.
 = easy pun on the bishop's name, Richard Fox: foxes were proverbially crafty.

= evil; the sense is "bad luck". = ie. "ye are".

175-6: **Our time...suddenly** = "we've been in Scotland too long: let's move quickly, to outrun news of our actions reaching Henry!"
Prevent = anticipate.

178: typical cheer of support; in Shakespeare's *Henry VI, Part 1*, the soldiers about to fight under the great Lord Talbot enter battle shouting "*a Talbot! a Talbot!*"

182-4: **admit...distrust** = Warbeck implores Katherine not to doubt him, which might lead to distrust.
charge their softness = weigh down the tenderness of her thoughts.

184 With burden of distrust. Should I prove wanting
 To noblest courage now, here were the trial:
 186 But I am perfect, sweet; I fear no change,
More than thy being partner in my sufferance.
 188
Kath. My fortunes, sir, have armed me to encounter
 190 What chance soe'er they meet with. – Jane, 'tis fit
 Thou stay behind, for whither wilt thou wander?
 192
Jane. Never till death will I forsake my mistress,
 194 Nor then in wishing to die with 'ee gladly.
 196
Kath. Alas, good soul!
 198
Frion. Sir, to your aunt of Burgundy
 I will relate your present undertakings:
 200 From her expect on all occasions welcome.
 You cannot find me idle in your services.
 202
Warb. Go, Frion, go: wise men know how to soothe
 204 Adversity, not serve it: thou hast waited

 Too long on expectation; "never yet
 206 Was any nation read of so besotted
 In reason as to adore the setting sun."

 208 Fly to the archduke's court; say to the duchess,
 Her nephew, with fair Katherine his wife,
 210 Are on their expectation to begin
 The raising of an empire: if they fail,
 212 Yet the report will never. Farewell, Frion!

 214 [Exit Frion.]
 216 This man, Kate, has been true, though now of late
 I fear too much familiar with the Fox.
 218
Re-enter Lord Dalyell with the Earl of Huntley.
 220
Hunt. I come to take my leave: you need not doubt
 222 My interest in this sometime child of mine;
 She's all yours now, good sir. –
 [to Katherine] O, poor lost creature,
 224 Heaven guard thee with much patience! if thou canst
 Forget thy title to old Huntley's family,
 226 As much of peace will settle in thy mind
 As thou canst wish to taste but in thy grave.
 228 Accept my tears yet, preethee; they are tokens
 Of charity as true as of affection.
 230
Kath. This is the cruëll'st farewell!
 232
Hunt. [To Warbeck] Love, young gentleman,

= lacking.
 = "here is the test".
 = satisfied, assured,⁹ or "not without courage".⁶
 = other.⁶ = suffering.

191: note the nice alliteration in the second half of this line.

193-4: until she dies, Jane will remain loyal to Katherine, preferring to die alongside her than live without her.

198-201: we may wonder if Frion is abandoning the ship, under the pretext of going to the continent for help.

204-5: *thou hast...expectation* = Frion has honourably stuck with Warbeck, without reward as yet.

205-7: *never...sun* = a melancholy sentiment; perhaps recognizing the decline of his fortunes, Warbeck knows that nobody wants to back a loser.
to adore = pronounce as *t'adore*.

= ie. to Flanders. = ie. Margaret of Burgundy.
 = meaning himself, as Richard, Duke of York.

211-2: *if they fail...never* = even if Warbeck's goal does not come to fruition, the renown of the attempt will live on forever.

217-8: Warbeck is anxious about Frion's frequent conferring with the English bishop.
true = loyal (to Warbeck).

= former.

= symbols.

= an imperative.

234	<u>This model of my griefs</u> ; she calls you husband;	= this abstract or representation, ¹ ie. symbol, of his griefs, alluding to Katherine.
	Then be not jealous of a parting kiss,	
236	It is a father's, not a lover's offering; –	
	Take it, my last [<i>Kisses her</i>]. – <u>I am too much a child</u> .	= Huntley begins to shed tears.
238	Exchange of passion is to little use,	238: "getting emotional here does neither of us any good".
	<u>So</u> I should grow too foolish: goodness guide thee!	= thus ⁶ or but. ⁹
240		
	[<i>Exit Huntley.</i>]	
242		
	Kath. Most miserable daughter! –	
	[<i>To Dalyell</i>] Have you aught	
244	To add, sir, to our sorrows?	
246	Daly. I resolve,	246-9: Dalyell will accompany Warbeck and Katherine wherever they choose to go.
	Fair lady, with your leave, to wait on all	= ie. Warbeck.
248	Your fortunes in my person, if <u>your lord</u>	249: "will deign to welcome me in this capacity."
	Vouchsafe me entertainment.	
250		
	Warb. We will be bosom-friends, most noble Dalyell;	
252	For I accept this <u>tender</u> of your love	= offer.
	Beyond ability of thanks to speak it. –	
254	<u>Clear thy drowned eyes</u> , my fairest: time and <u>industry</u>	= lovely image for "stop crying". = hard work.
	Will shew us better days, or end the worst.	
256		
	[<i>Exeunt.</i>]	
 <u>ACT IV, SCENE IV.</u>		
<i>The Palace of Westminster.</i>		
 <i>Enter Earl of Oxford and Lord Dawbney.</i>		
1	Oxf. No news from <u>Scotland</u> yet, my lord?	1: <i>After having been evicted from Scotland, Warbeck sailed with Katherine and one or two children to Cork, Ireland, landing on 26 July 1597. The citizens of Waterford wrote to Henry of Warbeck's intention to land in Cornwall, which he did on 7 September (his ships had been chased and caught by citizens of Waterford; they demanded Warbeck be turned over to them, but the captain swore he had no knowledge of the man, all the time which Warbeck was hiding in a barrel). Once in Cornwall, Warbeck quickly found himself surrounded by a supporting rabble of several thousand.</i>
2		
	Dawb. Not any	
4	But what King Henry knows himself: I thought	5-6: Henry changed his original plan of sending an additional army north to meet the Scottish. Except for Urswick, none of Henry's advisors know of his secret plotting with Hialas to negotiate a peace with James.
	Our armies should have marched that way; his mind,	
6	It seems, is altered.	
8	Oxf. Victory attends	
	His standard everywhere.	
10	Dawb. Wise princes, Oxford,	11-15: cunning is as necessary as brute strength to win a war.
	Fight not alone with forces. <u>Providence</u>	= foresight.

14	Directs and tutors strength; else <u>elephants</u> And <u>barbèd horses</u> might as well prevail As the most subtle stratagems of war.	= allusion to the use of <i>elephants</i> in ancient armies to terrify opponents. = horses wearing armour on their breasts and flanks. ¹
16	Oxf. The Scottish king shewed more than common bravery	
18	In <u>proffer</u> of a combat hand-to-hand With Surrey.	= "his offer".
20		
22	Dawb. And but shewed it: northern <u>bloods</u> Are gallant <u>being fired</u> ; but the cold climate, Without good <u>store</u> of fuël, quickly freezeth The glowing flames.	= ie. spirit, courage. = when inflamed. 23: <i>store</i> = supply. 23-24: <i>freezeth...flames</i> = ie. suppresses the spirit.
24		
26	Oxf. Surrey, <u>upon my life</u> , Would not have shrunk an hair's-breadth.	= ie. "I bet my life". 27: ie. would have gladly fought James without an iota of fear or hesitation.
28		
30	Dawb. May 'a forfeit The honour of an English name and nature, Who would not have embraced it with a greediness As violent as hunger runs to food! 'Twas <u>an addition</u> any worthy spirit Would covet, next to immortality, Above all joys of life: we all missed shares In that great opportunity.	29-32: 'a is meant generally: "any Englishman who would not gladly take up the chance to battle King James would lose all honour." = a mark of honour or distinction. ²
32		
34		
36		
38	<i>Enter King Henry and Urswick, whispering.</i>	
40	Oxf. The king! See, 'a comes smiling.	
42		
44	Dawb. O, the game runs smooth On his side, then, believe it: cards well shuffled And dealt with cunning bring some <u>gamester thrift</u> , But others must <u>rise</u> losers.	= gambler. = success or good luck. ¹ = ie. from the gaming table.
46		
48	K. Hen. The train takes?	48: "the scheme, snare or trick ^{1,9} is working?"
50	Urs. Most prosperously.	
52	K. Hen. I knew it should not miss. He <u>fondly angles</u> who will hurl his bait Into the water 'cause the fish at first Plays round about the line and dares not bite. –	53-55: a fishing metaphor: "any man is foolish who gives up any enterprise after but a single failure". <i>fondly</i> = foolishly. <i>angles</i> = ie. fishes.
54		
56	Lords, we may reign your king yet: Dawbney, Oxford, Urswick, must Perkin wear the crown?	56ff: Henry is in a good mood, and playful with his friends.
58		
60	Dawb. A slave!	
62	Oxf. A vagabond!	
64	Urs. A <u>glow-worm</u> !	= 17th century term of opprobrium. ¹

	<p>K. Hen. Now, if Frion,</p> <p>66 His practised politician, wear a brain Of proof, King Perkin will in progress ride</p> <p>68 <u>Through all his large dominions</u>; let us meet him,</p> <p>70 And <u>tender homage</u>: ha, sirs! <u>liegemen</u> ought To pay their <u>fealty</u>.</p> <p>72 Dawb. <u>Would</u> the rascal were, With all his rabble, within twenty miles 74 Of London!</p> <p>76 K. Hen. Farther off is near enough</p> <p>78 To lodge him in his home: I'll wager odds, Surrey and all his men are either idle</p> <p>80 Or <u>hasting back</u>; they have not work, I <u>doubt</u>, To keep them busy.</p> <p>82 Dawb. 'Tis a strange <u>conceit</u>, sir.</p> <p>84 K. Hen. Such voluntary <u>favours</u> as our people</p> <p>86 In duty aid us with, we never scattered On <u>cobweb parasites</u>, or lavished out</p> <p>88 In <u>riot</u> or a needless hospitality: No undeserving favourite doth boast His <u>issues</u> from our treasury; our <u>charge</u> 90 Flows through all Europe, proving us but steward Of every contribution which provides</p>	<p>65-70: Henry expects Warbeck, on the advice of Frion, will invade England.</p> <p>66-67: wear a...proof = literally, has an impenetrable skull, ie. is thick-skulled, or stupid.¹⁶ Pickburn, however, suggests, "has a brain which has been tested and found trustworthy" (p. 138).⁵</p> <p>= ie. throughout England, which Warbeck would rule as "king" (ironic).</p> <p>69-70: Henry humorously suggests they accept Warbeck as their overlord! tender = offer. fealty and homage = fealty was a vow not to do harm to one's lord; homage was a ceremony in which a vassal, or subject, acknowledged that his position was held at the sufferance of his lord. Throughout the pre-unification history of England and Scotland, English monarchs continuously attempted to force their Scottish counterparts to accept the English kings as their overlords. liegeman = a vassal who swore to provide support, especially military service, in return for protection from a superior lord.¹</p> <p>= if only.</p> <p>76-77: Farther off...his home = "there is no need to trap Warbeck in his hiding place any closer than he is."⁵</p> <p>77-80: I'll wager...busy = Henry playfully drops a hint that Surrey's army, which had hurried to meet James' army, is doing no fighting, because he expects or knows that James has made peace with the English.</p> <p>= ie. returning quickly to London. = suspect.</p> <p>= idea or notion; the nobles, still in the dark about Henry's schemes, are confused.</p> <p>84-89: Such voluntary...treasury = Henry explains how he never wastes the state's treasury on flatterers or an extravagant lifestyle. favours = ie. money, payments.⁶</p> <p>86: cobweb = used figuratively to describe anything frail or insubstantial.¹ parasites = those who through flattery gain the patronage of a rich or powerful person,¹ ie. Henry.</p> <p>= extravagant or dissolute lifestyle.¹</p> <p>89: issues = outflows, as of liquid,¹ referring to the wasteful or purposeless spending of state funds; used in metaphor with flows (line 90).</p>
--	---	---

92 Against the creeping canker of disturbance.

94 Is it not rare, then, in this toil of state
Wherein we are embarked, with breach of sleep,

Cares, and the noise of trouble, that our mercy

96 Returns nor thanks nor comfort? Still the West
Murmur and threaten innovatiōn,

98 Whisper our government tyrannical,
Deny us what is ours, nay, spurn their lives,
100 Of which they are but owners by our gift:
It must not be.

102 **Oxf.** It must not, should not.

104 *Enter Messenger with a packet.*

106 **K. Hen.** So then –
108 To whom?

110 **Mess.** This packet to your sacred majesty.

112 **K. Hen.** Sirrah, attend without.

114 *[Exit Messenger.]*
[Henry reads letter.]

116 **Oxf.** News from the North, upon my life.

118 **Dawb.** Wise Henry
120 Divines aforehand of events; with him
Attempts and executions are one act.

122 **K. Hen.** Urswick, thine ear: Frion is caught; the man
124 Of cunning is outrached; we must be safe.

Should reverend Morton, our archbishop, move
126 To a translation higher yet, I tell thee
My Durham owns a brain deserves that see;

89-92: **our charge...disturbance** = though thrifty, Henry is prudent enough to spend money when necessary to secure his throne, even distributing funds throughout the continent in order to purchase support and keep abreast of potentially harmful developments. Hall mentions that Henry had spies all over Europe.

charge = expenses,¹ ie. money.

creeping canker of disturbance = insidious malignancy of rebellion.¹

93: **rare** = striking.

93-95: **in this toil...trouble** = "in this time of struggle and war (*toil*), in which I (*we*) am engaged, with its accompanying lack of sleep, anxiety (*cares*), and noise of disturbance".

95-96: **that our...comfort** = "that I am rewarded with neither gratitude nor peace, despite the leniency I have shown my enemies?"

= ie. Cornwall.

= insurrection.²

= ie. refuse to pay their taxes. = kick at, ie. throw away.

112: **Sirrah** = common form of address used towards servants and the like.

attend without = "wait outside".

115: stage direction added by editor.

120-1: **with him...act** = anything Henry attempts is as good as done.

= outwitted. = I (the "royal we").

125-7: the Bishop of Durham deserves to be Archbishop, of Canterbury, should the present prelate Morton die.

125: **Morton** = **John Morton** (1420-1500), Henry's elderly Archbishop of Canterbury.

125-6: **move to...higher yet** = be transferred to Heaven, ie. die; Henry toys with the word **translation**, which was used to describe the re-assignment of a bishop from one

128 He's nimble in his industry, and mounting –
 Thou hear'st me?
 130 **Urs.** And conceive your highness fitly.
 132
 134 **K. Hen.** Dawbney and Oxford, since our army stands
Entire, it were a weakness to admit
 The rust of laziness to eat amongst them:
 136 Set forward toward Salisbury; the plains
 Are most commodious for their exercise.
 138 Ourselves will take a muster of them there;
And or disband them with reward, or else
 140 Dispose as best concerns us.
 142 **Dawb.** Salisbury!
 Sir, all is peace at Salisbury.
 144
 146 **K. Hen.** Dear friend,
 The charge must be our own; we would a little
 Pertake the pleasure with our subjects' ease. –
 148 Shall I entreat your loves?
 150 **Oxf.** Command our lives.
 152 **K. Hen.** Y'are men know how to do, not to forethink.
My bishop is a jewel tried and perfect;
 154 A jewel, lords. The post who brought these letters
 Must speed another to the Mayor of Exeter;
 156 Urswick, dismiss him not.
 158 **Urs.** He waits your pleasure.
 160 **K. Hen.** Perkin a king? a king!
 162 **Urs.** My gracious lord, –
 164 **K. Hen.** Thoughts busied in the sphere of royalty

location to another.¹

see = the particular location at which a bishop holds his position.

In fact, when Morton died in 1500, he was replaced by one Thomas Langton, who died 5 days later of the plague; Foxe was given the wealthy see of Winchester in 1503.

128: Durham is clever and quick in his work, and has aspirations to higher office.

129: Henry seems to be implying something to Urswick.

131: Urswick understands, but if there is a secret instruction being given to Urswick to help Durham along in his rise to higher office, the idea is never pursued or explained.

133-140 (below): Henry, still keeping secrets, remains humorously and ironically playful. He has now learned of Warbeck's landing at Cornwall, and the army he has raised – but out of a quirky sense of humour, won't tell the others what is going on.

= fully intact.¹ = would be. = allow, permit.

136-7: "take the army to **Salisbury Plain** (the famous 280 square mile great plain located about 90 miles west of London),¹⁵ where there is plenty of room to engage in military exercises."

138: Henry will personally travel to Salisbury Plain to assemble and count his soldiers.¹

= ie. and either.

142-3: Dawbney is naturally confused.

= responsibility or burden.¹

= act. = anticipate.¹

= ie. Durham. = tested.

= messenger.

= a city in south-west England, east of Cornwall; see Act V. i.62-65.

= ie. "keep the messenger hanging around as yet."

164-5: *thought...earth* = a king does not waste time worry-

Fix not on creeping worms without their stings,
166 Mere excrements of earth. The use of time
Is thriving safety, and a wise prevention
168 Of ills expected. We are resolved for Salisbury.

[*Exeunt.*]

ACT IV, SCENE V.

The Coast of Cornwall.

[A general shout within.]

*Enter Perkin Warbeck, Lord Dalyell,
Lady Katherine, and Jane.*

1 **Warb.** After so many storms as wind and seas
2 Have threatened to our weather-beaten ships,
At last, sweet fairest, we are safe arrived
4 On our dear mother earth, ingrateful only
To Heaven and us in yielding sustenance
6 To sly usurpers of our throne and right.

8 These general acclamations are an omen
Of happy process to their welcome lord:

10 They flock in troops, and from all parts with wings
Of duty fly to lay their hearts before us. –
12 Unequaled pattern of a matchless wife,
How fares my dearest yet?

14 **Kath.** Confirmed in health,
By which I may the better undergo

16 The roughest face of change; but I shall learn
Patience to hope, since silence courts affliction,
18 For comforts, to this truly noble gentleman, –

20 Rare unexampled pattern of a friend! –
And my beloved Jane, the willing follower
Of all misfortunes.

22 **Daly.** Lady, I return

ing about those who, like non-venomous snakes (*worms*),
are actually harmless.

166: *excrements* = ie. dregs¹

166-8: *The use...expected* = time must be occupied
wisely to forestall genuine injury that is brewing against the
throne.

prevention = anticipation.

= ie. off-stage.

Entering Characters: Warbeck and his small party have
landed at Cornwall, where they have been greeted by a
cheering crowd.

*Warbeck's party, comprised of "four small barks (boats),
with some six score or seven score fighting men", landed at
Whitsand Bay on the southern coast of Cornwall on 7
September 1497 (Bacon, p. 180).*

4-6: Warbeck indignantly describes England (*our dear mo-
ther* earth) as a land which has assisted a usurper – Henry –
to the throne.

ingrateful only = ie. the only nation so distasteful.¹

7-8: the Cornish have welcomed Warbeck with enthusiasm.

process = advance.⁹

*Warbeck, upon landing at Cornwall, quickly found him-
self leading an unarmed mob of 3000 men, and proclaimed
himself Richard the Fourth.*

= example, model; Warbeck's devotion to his wife, even
though he has been lying about his identify to her, is
his most sympathetic characteristic.

14-16: *Confirmed...of change* = Katherine feels healthy
enough to survive even the most trying of circumstances.

16-18: *but I...gentleman* = Katherine will learn how to keep
hope alive from the example of the patient Lord Dalyell (*the
noble gentleman*), who has accompanied the couple on their
journey.

= unmatched model or example.

23-25: with a nice agricultural metaphor, Dalyell seems to

24	But barren crops of <u>early protestations</u> , Frost-bitten in the spring of fruitless hopes.	allude to his disappointed expectation of wedding Katherine. 24: Dalyell's premature professions (<i>early protestations</i>) ⁶ of love for Katherine died stillborn. One may wonder if this bitter comment is out of character for the honourable Dalyell.
26		
28	Jane. I wait but as the shadow to the body; For madam, without you let me be nothing.	27-28: Jane considers herself to have little value compared to Katherine, to whom she is greatly devoted.
30	Warb. None talk of sadness, – we are on the way Which leads to victory: keep cowards thoughts	31-32: <i>keep cowards...sullenness</i> = "let cowards be the ones who hang on to thoughts of despairing anxiety" (Gibson, p. 311). ⁶
32	With desperate sullenness! The lion faints not Locked in a <u>grate</u> , but loose disdains all force	32-34: <i>The lion...prey</i> = even when confined in a cage (<u>grate</u>), ¹ the lion does not get dispirited; and once set free, it allows nothing to get in the way of its hunt for prey.
34	Which bars his prey, – and we are <u>lion-hearted</u> , Or else no king of beasts.	= brave as a lion; as we shall see, when the chips are down, Warbeck's bravado will desert him.
36		
38	[Another general shout within.]	
40	– <u>Hark</u> , how they shout, Triumphant in our cause! bold confidence Marches on bravely, cannot quake at danger.	= listen.
42		
44	<i>Enter Sketon.</i>	
46	Sket. <u>Save</u> King Richard the Fourth! save thee, king of hearts! The Cornish <u>blades</u> are men of <u>mettle</u> ; have proclaimed, through <u>Bodmin</u> and the whole county, my sweet prince Monarch of England: four thousand <u>tall</u> <u>yeomen</u> , with bow and sword, already vow to live and die at the foot of King Richard.	45: <i>Save</i> = ie. God save. 45-46: <i>king of hearts</i> = a 1621 work (John Taylor's <i>Taylor's motto Et habeo, et careo, et curo</i>) suggests that certain personalities may have been associated with each of the kings of a deck of cards: the <i>king of hearts</i> was beloved. 46: <i>blades</i> = ie. swords, and by extension the men wielding them. <i>mettle</i> = a common play on words with <i>metal</i> . = a town in Cornwall, through which Warbeck's army will march on its way to Exeter. = valiant. = respectable commoners serving as foot-soldiers. ¹
52	<i>Enter Astley.</i>	
54	Ast. <u>The mayor</u> , our fellow-counsellor, is servant for an emperor. <u>Exeter</u> is appointed for the rendezvous, and nothing <u>wants to</u> victory but courage and resolution.	= ie. John a-Water. = town about 60 miles east of Bodmin, located on the way to London. 56: has Astley humorously misspoken? he just said that "the only thing missing from our side to ensure victory is courage and determination."
56		

	<i>Sigillatum et datum decimo Septembris, anno regni</i>	57-58: "Signed and dated the 10th of September, in the first year of the reign of our king, etc., it is confirmed."
58	<i>regis primo, et cetera; confirmatum est.</i> All's cocksure.	58-59: <i>All's cocksure</i> = ie. "our plan is foolproof." Notice how Astley immediately follows up his impressive Latin with the humorously slangy <i>All's cock-sure</i> .
60	Warb. <u>To Exeter!</u> to Exeter, march on!	= <i>Warbeck and his army of more than 6000 did indeed march on to Exeter.</i>
62	Commend us to our people: we in person Will lend them <u>double spirits</u> ; tell them so.	= an extra dose of courage.
64	Sket. and Ast. King Richard, King Richard!	
66	[<i>Exeunt Sketon and Astley.</i>]	
68	Warb. A thousand blessings guard our lawful arms!	
70	A thousand horrors pierce our enemies' souls! Pale fear <u>unedge</u> their weapons' sharpest points!	= blunt.
72	And when they <u>draw their arrows to the head</u> ,	= ie. draw their arrows as far back as possible prior to releasing, so that the arrowhead is aligned between the two ends of the bent bow, as a means to maximize the power of the arrow's flight.
74	Numbness shall strike their sinews! Such advantage Hath Majesty in its pursuit of justice, That on the proppers-up of Truth's old throne	75: "that in those who support the cause of truth" (Pickburn, p. 139). ⁵
76	It both enlightens counsel and gives heart To execution; whiles the throats of traitors	76-77: <i>heart...execution</i> = courage to act.
78	<u>Lie bare</u> before our mercy. – O, <u>divinity</u>	78: <i>Lie bare</i> = ie. exposed to be cut. <i>divinity</i> = reference to the divine nature of kings.
80	Of royal birth! how it strikes dumb the tongues Whose <u>prodigality</u> of breath is bribed By <u>trains</u> to greatness! Princes are but men	79-81: <i>how it...greatness</i> = the divine nature of kings awes into respectful silence those who once flattered so extravagantly, and who, by cunning stratagem, have been won over to those of high rank (Pickburn, p. 140). ⁵ Warbeck alludes to James' treatment and subsequent abandonment of him during his time in Scotland. <i>prodigality</i> = waste or abundance. ¹ <i>trains</i> = treachery or snares. ¹ <i>trains to greatness</i> = Gibson has an entirely different take on this: "great men's crowds of servants" (p. 313). ⁶
82	Distinguished in the fineness of their <u>frailty</u> , Yet not so <u>gross</u> in beauty of the mind;	= body, frame. ² = conspicuously or obviously great or large, ¹ or common. ⁹
84	For there's a fire more sacred purifies	84-85: <i>For there's...mixture</i> = metaphorically, "because there exists in princes a fire which purges the worthless matter (ordinary humanity) of its contaminating elements" (Gibson, p. 313). ⁶ <i>dross</i> (line 85) = impure or foreign matter mixed in with a pure substance.
86	The dross of mixture. Herein <u>stands the odds</u> , "Subjects are men on earth, <u>kings</u> men and gods."	= "lies the difference" (Anderson, p. 84). ⁹ = ie. kings are.
88	[<i>Exeunt.</i>]	

END OF ACT IV.

ACT V.

SCENE I.

St. Michael's Mount, Cornwall.

*Enter Lady Katherine and Jane in riding-suits,
with one Servant.*

1 **Kath.** It is decreed; and we must yield to Fate,
2 Whose angry justice, though it threaten ruin,
Contempt, and poverty, is all but trial
4 Of a weak woman's constancy in suffering.
Here, in a stranger's and an enemy's land,
6 Forsaken and unfurnished of all hopes
But such as wait on misery, I range,

8 To meet affliction wheresoe'er I tread.
My train and pomp of servants is reduced
10 To one kind gentlewoman and this groom. –
Sweet Jane, now whither must we?

12 **Jane.** To your ships,
14 Dear lady, and turn home.

16 **Kath.** Home! I have none.
Fly thou to Scotland; thou hast friends will weep
18 For joy to bid thee welcome; but, O, Jane,
My Jane! my friends are desperate of comfort,

20 As I must be of them: the common charity,
Good people's alms and prayers of the gentle,
22 Is the revénue must support my state.

As for my native country, since it once
24 Saw me a princess in the height of greatness
My birth allowed me, here I make a vow:
26 Scotland shall never see me being fallen
Or lessened in my fortunes. Never, Jane,
28 Never to Scotland more will I return.
Could I be England's queen, – a glory, Jane,

30 I never fawned on, – yet the king who gave me
Hath sent me with my husband from his presence,
32 Delivered us suspected to his nation,

Scene I: the opening scene takes place at *St. Michael's Mount*, a small island off the southern shore of Cornwall, to which one can walk at low-tide.

Entering Characters: Warbeck has left *Katherine* behind with her attendant *Jane* and one male *servant*, as the Pretender went riding out with his army to win the throne.

Gainsford tells us that Katherine disguised herself as a servant to try to escape the pursuing English, and was planning to leave Cornwall by ship.

= a test.

= fortitude.²

= foreigner's, ie. England, as opposed to Scotland.

= bereft.⁵

7: **But such...wait on** = ie. "except for those hopes that accompany".

range = wander (geographically).

= retinue.

10: ie. "to Jane and one other servant (**groom**)."

= "to where must we go?"

= ie. "flee", an imperative.

= without.

20-22: **the common...state** = without any real means to survive, Katherine must make do with charity and prayers from her supporters.

the gentle = persons of high birth.

revenue = stressed on its second syllable.

state = condition.

28: *Katherine actually lived the rest of her life in England.*

= "if I could be queen of England" – but Katherine never finishes her point.

= aspired to.¹ = ie. James, who gave her away in marriage.

32: ie. James sent Warbeck away under a cloud of suspicion as to his identity.

to his nation = either (1) to England, as Warbeck's nation; or (2) by Scotland, James' nation.

34 Rendered us spectacles to time and pity;
 And is it fit I should return to such
 As only listen after our descent
 36 From happiness enjoyed to misery
 Expected, though uncertain? Never, never! –
 38 Alas, why dost thou weep? and that poor creature

Wipe his wet cheeks too? let me feel alone
 40 Extremities, who know to give them harbour;

Nor thou nor he has cause: you may live safely.
 42

Jane. There is no safety whiles your dangers, madam,
 44 Are every way apparent.

46 **Serv.** Pardon, lady,
 I cannot choose but shew my honest heart;
 48 You were ever my good lady.

50 **Kath.** O, dear souls,
 Your shares in grief are too-too much!
 52

Enter Lord Dalyell.

54

Daly. I bring,
 56 Fair princess, news of further sadness yet
 Than your sweet youth hath been acquainted with.
 58

Kath. Not more, my lord, than I can welcome: speak it;
 60 The worst, the worst I look for.

62 **Daly.** All the Cornish
 At Exeter were by the citizens
 64 Repulsed, encountered by the Earl of Devonshire
 And other worthy gentlemen of the country.

66 Your husband marched to Taunton, and was there

Affronted by King Henry's chamberlain;
 68 The king himself in person with his army
 Advancing nearer, to renew the fight
 70 On all occasions: but the night before
 The battles were to join, your husband privately,
 72 Accompanied with some few horse, departed
 From out the camp, and posted none knows whither.

= ie. Scotland, the Scottish people.
 35: "who are eager to hear about our fall."^{1,5}
 = ie. "from the good fortune we used to enjoy".

= ie. Katherine's male servant.

39-40: **let me...harbour** = ie. "let me alone to be the one to endure the hardships, because I know how to manage them."

= ie. to cry.

= ie. "hath been until now".

62ff: Dalyell gives a reasonably accurate summary of the actual anticlimactic fate of Warbeck and his army.

62-65: twice Warbeck's army attempted to storm Exeter, but were driven off by its citizens, with the help of the **Earl of Devonshire, Edward Courtenay** (d. 1509).
The Courtenays had always supported the Lancastrians. Edward had fought with Henry at Bosworth, and been raised an earl as a reward for his support. His grandson Henry, however, was beheaded in 1538 for conspiring to overthrow Henry VIII.

= abandoning Exeter on the approach of an army led by the Lord Chamberlain Dawbney, Warbeck's army, now numbering about 8000, moved on to Taunton, about 40 miles north-east of Exeter.

= confronted.

= armies.⁵
 = cavalry.
 73: **posted** = rode.

74		<i>Warbeck, having finally, after all these years, reached his opportunity to fight for the crown, abandoned his army, fleeing with 60 horsemen.</i>
76	Kath. Fled without battle given?	
78	Daly. Fled, but followed By Dawbney; all <u>his parties</u> left to taste King Henry's mercy, – for to that they yielded, – Victorious without bloodshed.	= Warbeck's supporters or followers (except the cavalry who fled with him).
82	Kath. O, my sorrows! If both our lives had proved the sacrifice To Henry's tyranny, we had fall'n like princes, And robbed him of the glory of his pride.	83-84: <i>If both...tyranny</i> = ie. had both Warbeck and herself died at Henry's hands.
86	Daly. Impute it not to faintness or to weakness Of noble courage, lady, but to foresight; For by some secret friend he had intelligence Of being bought and sold by his base followers. Worse yet remains untold.	89-90: Bacon refers to a rumour that Warbeck had been betrayed, but he himself believed Warbeck ran away out of fear.
92	Kath. No, no, it cannot.	
94	Daly. I fear y[ou] are betrayed: the Earl of Oxford Runs hot in your pursuit.	
98	Kath. 'A shall not need; We'll run as hot in resolution gladly To make the earl our jailor.	98: "Oxford need not hurry to find me."
102	Jane. Madam, madam, They come, they come!	
104	<i>Enter Earl of Oxford with his Followers.</i>	
106	Daly. Keep back! or he who dares Rudely to violate the law of honour Runs on my sword.	107-9: Dalyell draws his sword to face the intruders.
110	Kath. Most noble sir, forbear. – What reason draws you hither, gentlemen? Whom seek 'ee?	
114	Oxf. <u>All stand off!</u> – With favour, lady, From Henry, England's king, I would present Unto the beauteous princess, Katherine Gordon, The <u>tender</u> of a gracious <u>entertainment</u> .	= Oxford commands his retinue, who are no doubt squaring off against Dalyell with their own swords drawn, to back off. = offer. = welcome.
120	Kath. <u>We</u> are that princess, whom your master-king Pursues with reaching arms to draw into His power: let him use his tyranny, We shall not be his subject.	= Katherine assumes to employ the royal "we".
124	Oxf. My commission Extends no further, excellentest lady,	

128 Than to a service; 'tis King Henry's pleasure
That you, and all that have relation t'ee,
Be guarded as becomes your birth and greatness;

130 For, rest assured, sweet princess, that not ought
Of what you do call yours shall find disturbance,
132 Or any welcome other than what suits
Your high condition.

134 **Kath.** By what title, sir,
136 May I acknowledge you?

138 **Oxf.** Your servant, lady,
Descended from the line of Oxford's earls,
140 Inherits what his ancestors before him
Were owners of.

142 **Kath.** Your king is herein royal,
144 That by a peer so ancient in desert
As well as blood commands us to his presence.

146 **Oxf.** Invites 'ee, princess, not commands.

148 **Kath.** Pray use
150 Your own phrase as you list: to your protection
Both I and mine submit.

152 **Oxf.** There's in your number
154 A nobleman whom fame hath bravely spoken.
To him the king my master bad me say
156 How willingly he courts his friendship; far
From an enforcement, more than what in terms
158 Of courtesy so great a prince may hope for.

160 **Daly.** My name is Dalyell.

162 **Oxf.** 'Tis a name hath won
Both thanks and wonder from report, my lord:
164 The court of England emulates your merit,
And covets to embrace 'ee.

166 **Daly.** I must wait on
168 The princess in her fortunes.

170 **Oxf.** Will you please,
Great lady, to set forward?

172 **Kath.** Being driven
174 By fate, it were in vain to strive with Heaven.

176 [Exeunt.]

ACT V, SCENE II.

Salisbury.

127-9: **'tis King...greatness** = Oxford assures Katherine that she and her dependents will be treated well, as befits her rank.

130-1: **not ought...disturbance** = no harm will come to anyone, or anything (**ought**), connected to Katherine.

= status, rank.

= merit, deserving.

= please.

= word, ie. **invites** instead of **commands**. = desire, wish.

= ie. Dalyell. = public report has spoken well of.⁵

156-8: **far...hope for** = Henry, ever tactful, invites Dalyell to be his friend, but will not force him to accept the offer.

= desires to match, out of admiration.¹

Scene II: Henry had indicated above at Act IV.iv.136-8 that

Enter King Henry, Earl of Surrey, Urswick,
and a guard of Soldiers.

1 **K. Hen.** The counterfeit, King Perkin, is escaped: –
2 Escape[d]! so let him; he is hedged too fast
3 Within the circuit of our English pale
4 To steal out of our ports, or leap the walls
5 Which guard our land; the seas are rough and wider
6 Than his weak arms can tug with. – Surrey, henceforth

Your king may reign in quiet; turmoils past,
8 Like some unquiet dream, have rather busied
9 Our fancy than affrighted rest of state. –

10 But, Surrey, why, in articling a peace
11 With James of Scotland, was not restitution
12 Of losses which our subjects did sustain
13 By the Scotch inroads questioned?

14 **Sur.** Both demanded
15 And urged, my lord; to which the king replied,
16 In modest merriment, but smiling earnest,
17 How that our master Henry was much abler
18 To bear the detriments than he repay them.

19 **K. Hen.** The young man, I believe, spake honest truth;
20 'A studies to be wise betimes. – Has, Urswick,
21 Sir Rice ap Thomas, and Lord Brook our steward,

22 Returned the Western gentlemen full thanks
23 From us for their tried loyalties?

24 **Urs.** They have;
25 Which, as if health and life had reigned amongst 'em,
26 With open hearts they joyfully received.

he planned to travel to Salisbury to meet up with the royal army.

= surrounded. = securely.
= compass or extent.¹ = domain.¹

= ie. struggle against: the image is of Warbeck trying futilely to escape England by rowboat.

= imagination. = frightened the tranquility of the nation.⁶

10-13: Henry wonders why Surrey, when he was negotiating (**articling**)¹ for peace with James, failed to include a reparations requirement for all the damage inflicted by the Scots on English property. Dyce suggests that this is consistent with Ford's portrayal of Henry as a bit on the cheap side. See, e.g., Henry's speech at Act IV.iv.84f.

inroads = incursions.¹

15-19: Surrey claims he did introduce such a demand, which James successfully parried.

= damages.¹

21: **The young man** = James was 24 at this time.

spake = ie. spoke, a common alternate form.

= endeavors. = in good time,¹ or while he is young.⁶

= a supporter of Henry's since Bosworth; Pickburn notes that Thomas was mentioned by Shakespeare in *Richard III* (Act IV.v.12) as an ally of Richmond's.

= ie. those nobles who fought against Warbeck.

= proved.¹

31-35 (below): Young Buckingham...forget = Henry praises **Edward Stafford, 3rd Duke of Buckingham (1478-1521)**. *Edward was five when his father, Henry, 2nd Duke of Buckingham, was executed by Richard III, as portrayed in Shakespeare's play. His family's lands were returned to him when Henry took the throne. Edward was a captain in the royal army that chased after Warbeck. A powerful and wealthy lord, Buckingham played important roles in the administrations of both Henry VII and especially Henry VIII.*

Eventually, the latter Henry became suspicious of Buckingham's possible royal ambitions, as he was a descendent of Edward III, and had him tried and executed in 1521. The trial was unfair, as Buckingham was given no chance to

32 **K. Hen.** Young Buckingham is a fair-natured prince,
Lovely in hopes, and worthy of his father;

34 Attended by an hundred knights and squires
Of special name he tendered humble service,
Which we must ne'er forget: and Devonshire's wounds,
36 Though slight, shall find sound cure in our respect.

38 *Enter Lord Dawbney with a Guard,
leading in Perkin Warbeck, Heron, John A-Water,
40 Astley, and Sketon, chained.*

42 **Dawb.** Life to the king, and safety fix his throne!
I here present you, royal sir, a shadow

44 Of majesty, but in effect a substance
Of pity; a young man, in nothing grown

46 To ripeness but th' ambition of your mercy, –
Perkin, the Christian world's strange wonder.

48 **K. Hen.** Dawbney,
50 We observe no wonder: I behold, 'tis true,
An ornament of nature, fine and polished,
52 A handsome youth indeed, but not admire him.
How came he to thy hands?

54 **Dawb.** From sanctuary
56 At Bewley, near Southampton; registered,
With these few followers, for persons privileged.

58 **K. Hen.** I must not thank you, sir; you were to blame
60 T' infringe the liberty of houses sacred:
Dare we be irreligious?

62 **Dawb.** Gracious lord,
64 They voluntarily resigned themselves
Without compulsion.

66 **K. Hen.** So? 'twas very well;
68 'Twas very, very well. –
[To Warbeck] Turn now thine eyes,
Young man, upon thyself and thy past actions;

cross-examine his accusers, and it is likely that the king had made up his mind ahead of time that he must die.

Buckingham's feud with Cardinal Wolsey, and his betrayal and conviction, are central to the early scenes of Shakespeare's **Henry VIII**.

= "of great promise" (Anderson, p. 89).⁹ = see the note above.

= distinguished.⁹

= Gainsford notes that Devonshire had been struck in the arm by an arrow.

36: **sound cure** = ie. metaphor for "appropriate reward". '**respect** = favour or esteem.^{6,9}

Entering Characters: Perkin Warbeck has finally been captured, along with his advisors.

Warbeck surrendered on 4 October 1497, only 27 days after he had arrived in Cornwall.

= make secure.⁹

= insubstantial image or imitation.¹

44-45: **substance...pity** = tangible or genuine object deserving of pity.

= hope to gain.⁵

= wonder or marvel at.

55-57: Having left his army with a small company of cavalry, Warbeck quickly abandoned the horsemen in turn, fleeing with three companions to Beaulieu, an impressive abbey in Hampshire, where he hoped to find safety from arrest. English law recognized certain religious locations as places of sanctuary, where fugitives could find safety and immunity from arrest.

for (line 57) = as being.⁵

59-61: Henry worries that Dawbney may have violated the rules of sanctuary in forcing the arrest of Warbeck.

64: *Warbeck surrendered, trusting Henry's promise to spare his life; Henry was as good as his word.*

70	What revels in <u>combustion</u> through our kingdom A frenzy of aspiring youth hath danced,	= tumult, confusion. ²
72	Till, <u>wanting</u> breath, thy feet of pride have slipt To break thy neck!	= lacking, out of.
74		
76	Warb. But not my heart; my heart Will <u>mount</u> till every drop of blood be frozen	75-76: <i>my heart ...mount</i> = Warbeck's <i>mounting heart</i> contrasts nicely with his <i>slipt feet</i> . <i>mount</i> = aspire (to greatness).
78	By death's perpetual winter: if the sun Of majesty be darkened, let the sun Of life be hid from me in an eclipse	77-80: <i>if the sun...universal</i> = if Warbeck cannot be king, he prefers to die. 77-88: <i>if the sun...Haven</i> = note the extended celestial imagery in this speech, with <i>sun, darkened, eclipse</i> , etc.
80	Lasting and universal. Sir, remember There was a shooting-in of light when <u>Richmond</u> ,	
82	Not aiming at a crown, retired, and gladly, For comfort to the <u>Duke of Bretaine's court</u> .	80-83: <i>Sir...court</i> = in a desperate gamble, Warbeck boldly reminds Henry of his (the king's) own background as a rebel, hoping for mercy in Henry's recognition of Warbeck as a kindred spirit. <i>Richmond</i> = ie. Henry's title before he became king. <i>Duke of Bretaine's court</i> = Henry had received sub- stantial aid from the Duke of Brittany as he was planning to overthrow Richard.
84	Richard, who swayed the sceptre, was reputed A tyrant then; yet then a dawning glimmered	
86	To some few wandering remnants, promising day When first they ventured on a frightful shore	85-88: <i>yet then...Haven</i> = Henry and his army had landed at <i>Milford Haven</i> in Wales in August 1485, on his way to colliding with King Richard at the Battle of Bosworth.
88	At <u>Milford Haven</u> ; –	
90	Dawb. Whither speeds his boldness? – Check his rude tongue, great sir.	90-91: Dawbney is shocked to see Henry tolerate Warbeck's addressing him so presumptuously.
92		
94	K. Hen. O, let him <u>range</u> :	= wander, ie. "talk as he pleases".
96	The player's on the <u>stage</u> still, 'tis his <u>part</u> ; 'A does but act. – What followed?	94-95: the Elizabethan dramatists' frequent self-conscious allusions to life as a <i>stage</i> are always pleasing; and it is particularly appropriate here, as Warbeck is indeed playing a <i>part</i> .
98	Warb. Bosworth Field; Where, at an instant, to the world's amazement, A morn to Richmond, and a night to Richard, Appeared <u>at once</u> : <u>the tale is soon applied</u> ;	99: a final flourish to Warbeck's celestial imagery. = at the same time. ⁶ = "the story (or moral) is the same here".
100	<u>Fate</u> , which crowned these attempts when least assured, Might have befriended <u>others like resolved</u> .	101: personified <i>Fate</i> helped Henry defeat Richard when such a victory seemed most out of reach. 102: <i>others</i> = ie. such as Warbeck himself. <i>like resolved</i> = "who were as determined as Rich- mond had been to gain the crown."
104	K. Hen. A <u>pretty</u> gallant! Thus your aunt of Burgundy, Your duchess-aunt, informed her nephew; so,	104: <i>pretty</i> = clever. ¹ 104-5: <i>Thus your...nephew</i> = ie. "so your 'aunt' Mar- garet told you!"
106	The lesson prompted and well <u>conned</u> , was moulded Into familiar dialogue, oft rehearsed,	= memorized; Henry continues his stage metaphor, begun at lines 94-95 above. <i>conned</i> = memorized.

108 Till, learnt by heart, 'tis now received for truth.

110 **Warb.** Truth, in her pure simplicity, wants art

To put a feignèd blush on: Scorn wears only
 112 Such fashion as commends to gazers' eyes
Sad ulcerated novelty, far beneath
 114 The sphere of majesty: in such a court

Wisdom and gravity are proper robes,

116 By which the sovereign is best distinguished
 From zanies to his greatness.

118 **K. Hen.** Sirrah, shift

120 Your antic pageantry, and now appear
In your own nature, or you'll taste the danger
 122 Of fooling out of season.

124 **Warb.** I expect
 No less than what severity calls justice,

126 And politicians safety; let such beg
 As feed on alms: but if there can be mercy

128 In a protested enemy, then may it
 Descend to these poor creatures, whose engagements,
 130 To th' bettering of their fortunes, have incurred

A loss of all; to them, if any charity
 132 Flow from some noble orator, in death
 I owe the fee of thankfulness.

134 **K. Hen.** So brave!
 136 What a bold knave is this! – Which of these rebels
 Has been the Mayor of Cork?

138 **Dawb.** This wise formality. –
 140 Kneel to the king, 'ee rascals!

142 [They kneel.]

= ie. Warbeck actually believes what he is saying.

110-1: **Truth...blush on** = personified **Truth**, in her morally unstained sincerity (*pure simplicity*), lacks the skill or cunning (*wants art*) to fake shame, ie. why should Warbeck feel embarrassment from asserting what is true?

111-4: **Scorn...of majesty** = personified **Scorn**, on the other hand, acts only to draw the attention of those present to unusual spectacles (ie. Warbeck), and, as such, is unworthy of the majesty of a king (ie. Henry).
commends = directs attention.¹
Sad ulcerated novelty = Warbeck means himself.
ulcerated = irritated, like an ulcer.¹

= ie. the more appropriate qualities of kings; Warbeck continues the metaphor of **wearing fashion** in lines 111-2 above.

= clownish impersonators.^{1,5,9}

119: **Sirrah** = Henry, getting irritated, uses this form of address to indicate contempt.
shift = exchange.

= grotesque or bizarre performance,¹ hence, "assumed act".⁵
 = "as yourself", ie. Warbeck's true identity.
 = common expression for "inappropriately".

124-6: **I expect...safety** = ie. Warbeck expects to be executed, a punishment he sarcastically describes as being called **justice** by those who are quick to dole out harsh sentences to eliminate their enemies in the name of preserving the security of the state (*safety*).

126-7: **let such...alms** = ie. "those who seek alms can beg, but not I."

= self-professed or admitted.

129-131: **Descend...loss of all** = "be granted to these unlucky folks (*these poor creatures*, referring to his followers) whom I engaged, hoping by my success to improve their fortunes, but instead causing them to lose everything."

131-3: **to them...thankfulness** = "if anyone here is willing to speak on their behalves, I will be grateful even in my death."
orator = advocate.⁶

135: "ie. "excellent!" Henry is sarcastic.

139: Dawbney indicates John A-Water.

144	K. Hen. Canst thou hope A pardon, where thy guilt is so apparent?	
146	J. a-Wat. Under your good favours, as men are men,	
148	they may err; for I confess, <u>respectively</u> , in taking great	147ff: even facing death, the ex-mayor cannot help speaking obtusely!
150	<u>parts</u> , the one side prevailing, the other side must go	= respectfully. ⁶
152	down: herein the point is clear, if the proverb hold, that	= sides.
154	<u>hanging goes by destiny</u> , that it is to little purpose to	= proverbial; cf. <i>The Merchant of Venice</i> , Act II.ix: " <i>Hang-</i>
156	say, this thing or that shall be thus or thus; for, as the	<i>ing and wiving go by destiny</i> ".
158	Fates will have it, so it must be; and who can help it?	
160	Dawb. O, blockhead! thou a privy-counsellor?	155: Dawbney is astounded that such an obvious idiot should have served in even a mock-king's inner council.
162	<u>Beg life</u> , and cry aloud, "Heaven save King Henry!"	= ie. "beg for mercy!"
164	J. a-Wat. Every man knows what is best, as it happens;	
166	for my own part, I believe it is true, if I be not	
168	deceived, that kings must be kings and subjects subjects;	
170	but which is which, you shall pardon me for that:	
172	whether we speak or hold our peace, all are mortal;	
174	no man knows his end.	
176	K. Hen. We <u>trifle</u> time with follies.	= waste.
178	Her., J. a-Wat., Ast., Sket. Mercy, mercy!	167: note that Warbeck's followers, but not Warbeck him- self, beg the king for mercy.
180	K. Hen. Urswick, command the <u>dukeling</u> and these	= contemptuous term for Warbeck, the imitation-duke.
182	fellows	
184	[<i>They rise.</i>]	
186	To <u>Digby</u> , the <u>lieftenant</u> of the Tower:	173: Digby = this is one Sir John Digby. ⁶ lieftenant = ie. lieutenant: the <i>f</i> is pronounced: <i>lef-</i> <i>TEN-ant</i> .
188	<u>With safety</u> let them be conveyed to London.	= securely.
190	It is our pleasure no uncivil outrage,	175-6: <i>despite Henry's orders here, Warbeck was in fact</i> <i>paraded through London and taunted by the curious</i> <i>onlookers.</i>
192	Taunts or abuse be suffered to their persons;	
194	They shall meet fairer law than they deserve.	
196	Time may restore their wits, whom vain ambition	
198	Hath many years <u>distracted</u> .	= caused to become imbalanced.
200	Warb. Noble thoughts	
202	Meet freedom in captivity: the Tower, –	182-3: the Tower...nursery = Warbeck not only refuses to confess, but pretentiously "remembers" the scene of his royal childhood.
204	Our childhood's dreadful nursery!	
206	K. Hen. No more!	
208	Urs. Come, come, you shall have <u>leisure</u> to bethink 'ee.	= ie. lots of time.
210	[<i>Exit Urswick with Perkin Warbeck</i> <i>and his Followers, guarded.</i>]	

192	K. Hen. <u>Was ever</u> so much impudence in <u>forgery</u> ? The custom, sure, of being <u>styled</u> a king	= was there ever. = deceit, fraud. ¹ = called.
194	Hath fastened in his thought that he is such;	194: Warbeck actually believes he is the Duke of York.
196	But we shall teach the lad another language: 'Tis good we have him <u>fast</u> .	= securely.
198	Dawb. The hangman's <u>physic</u> Will <u>purge</u> this saucy <u>humour</u> .	198-9: a nice medical metaphor, with <i>physic</i> (medicine), <i>purge</i> and <i>humour</i> : while <i>humour</i> could mean inclination or eccentricity, it also alludes to any one of the four fluids (humours) in the human body: blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile; certain sicknesses were caused by possessing an excess of one or more of the humours – hence the need to <i>purge</i> them.
200		
202	K. Hen. Very likely; Yet we could <u>temper</u> mercy with <u>extremity</u> , Being not too far provoked.	202-3: once again, Henry reveals an inclination to be merciful, suggesting he is willing to mix (<i>temper</i>) mercy with severity (<i>extremity</i>).
204		
206	[Enter Earl of Oxford, Lady Katherine in her richest attire, Lord Dalyell, Jane, and Attendants.]	
208	Oxf. Great sir, be pleased, With your accustomed grace to entertain The Princess Katherine Gordon.	
210		
212	K. Hen. Oxford, herein We must <u>beshrew</u> thy knowledge of our nature. A lady of her birth and virtues could not Have found us so unfurnished of good manners As not, on notice given, to have met her Halfway in point of love. – [To Katherine] Excuse, <u>fair cousin</u> ,	212-7: Henry mildly scolds Oxford for suggesting he needs reminding to treat Katherine gracefully. = censure. ²
214		
216		217: <i>fair cousin</i> = assuming Katherine was truly the granddaughter of James I, she and Henry would have been very distantly related, as they shared an ancestor in John Beaufort, son of John of Gaunt, who was a son of Edward III. Henry also likely uses <i>cousin</i> as a signal of affection and kindness. ¹
218	The oversight: –	212-8: Bacon states that Henry received Katherine "not only with compassion, but with affection; pity giving more impression to her excellent beauty" (p. 184).
220		
222	O, fie! you <u>may</u> not kneel; Tis most unfitting: first, <u>vousafer</u> this welcome, A welcome to your own; for you shall find us But guardian to your fortune and your honours.	= must. = deign to accept. ¹
224		
226	Kath. My fortunes and mine honours are weak <u>champions</u> , As both are now befriended, sir: however, Both bow before your clemency.	= a <i>champion</i> is one who fights on behalf of another. ¹
228		
230		
232	K. Hen. Our arms Shall circle them from malice. – A sweet lady!	231-2: Henry likely embraces Katherine, assuring her that in encircling her with his arms, he will protect her <i>honour</i> and <i>fortunes</i> (lines 225 and 227) from those who may wish to harm her.
	Beauty incomparable! – here lives majesty	

234	<u>At league</u> with love.		
236	Kath. O, sir, I have a husband. –		= allied or combined with.
238	K. Hen. We'll prove your father, husband, friend, and servant, Prove what you wish to grant us. – Lords, be careful		= Katherine tries to tactfully probe to determine what Henry has in store for Warbeck.
240	A <u>patent</u> presently be drawn for issuing A thousand pounds from our exchequer yearly		238: note how Henry, both here and again at line 248 below, intently ignores Katherine's query about Warbeck's fate. 239-242: Lords...life = Henry orders that a stipend be given to Katherine. = a document granting a privilege or right. ¹
242	During our cousin's life. – <u>Our queen</u> shall be Your chief companion, our own court your home,		241: Bacon tells us only that Henry allowed Katherine an "honourable allowance" which "she enjoyed both during the king's life, and many years after" (p. 184). According to the Bank of England's online inflation calculator, £1000 in 1495 is worth £ 1.1 million today. ¹⁴
244	Our subjects all your servants.		= ie. Henry's wife, Elizabeth of York.
246	Kath. But my husband?		238-244: notice how Henry has indirectly let Katherine know she will spend the rest of her life in England. <i>Henry always treated Katherine well, and did indeed grant her a pension, as well as pay her wardrobe expenses.</i>
248	K. Hen. By all descriptions, you are noble Dalyell, Whose generous <u>truth</u> hath famed a <u>rare observance</u> .		249: whose great loyalty (truth) and seldom-seen or excellent attentive care (rare observance) to Katherine has become famous. ¹
250	We thank 'ee; 'tis a goodness gives addition To every title boasted from your ancestry,		250-2: 'tis a...worthy = Dalyell's innate chivalrous character adds luster to whatever family titles he possesses.
252	In all most worthy.		
254	Daly. Worthier than your praises, Right princely sir, I need not glory in.		
256	K. Hen. Embrace him, lords. – [To Katherine] Whoever calls you mistress		257-9: Henry's attention quickly returns to Katherine. 257-8: Whoever...charge = Henry promises to protect all of Katherine's dependents.
258	<u>Is lifted in our charge</u> . – A goodlier beauty Mine eyes yet ne'er encountered.		is lifted...charge = ie. "is raised so as to be under my special care" (Pickburn, p. 142). ⁵
260	Kath. Cruël misery		= remains.
262	Of fate! what <u>rests</u> to hope for?		= vocative term, meaning "beautiful lady".
264	K. Hen. Forward, lords, To London. – <u>Fair</u> , ere long I shall present ye		266: object = sight. ¹ Huntley's blessing = Henry will surprise Katherine with the presence of her father, Lord Huntley, whom James, we remember, had sent to England to conclude a peace with Henry.
266	With a glad <u>object</u> , – peace, and <u>Huntley's blessing</u> .		
268	[Exeunt.]		

ACT V, SCENE III.

Tyburn.

Enter Constable and Officers, Perkin Warbeck, Urswick, and Lambert Simnel as a Falconer, followed by the rabble.

A pair of stocks.

1 **Const.** Make room there! keep off, I require 'ee; and
2 none come within twelve foot of his majesty's new
3
4 stocks, upon pain of displeasure. – Bring forward the
malefactors. – Friend, you must to this gear, no remedy.
5
6 – Open the hole, and in with his legs, just in the middle
hole; there, that hole. [*Warbeck is put in the stocks.*]
7
8 – Keep off, or I'll commit you all: shall not a man in
authority be obeyed! – So, so, there; 'tis as it should be:
9 put on the padlock, and give me the key. – Off, I say,
10 keep off!

Scene III: Tyburn = a town located on the edge of London; Tyburn was the primary site of executions by hanging.¹⁵

The play, historically, moves forward two years to 1499. Henry had originally treated Warbeck with great leniency, not only sparing his life, but also even letting him live at and move about the king's court with complete freedom (though Henry had him constantly watched).

On 9 June 1498, however, Warbeck escaped, but got no further than Syon Abbey, located in what is now West London, where he quickly surrendered. At this point, the narratives of the sources diverge slightly.

According to Gainsford, Warbeck was immediately placed in public stocks at Westminster, to be abused by the public; he was then tortured on the rack, which resulted in his not only admitting his crimes, but also writing out a lengthy confession, which he was forced to read aloud in public on multiple occasions.

Bacon, however, tells us that after surrendering, Warbeck was exhibited in stocks twice, first at Westminster, then at "the cross in Cheapside", during which he read out his confession.

Either way, Henry by now had no choice but to confine Warbeck in the Tower of London for the rest of his life.

In 1499, Warbeck tried to bribe his keepers into joining a plot to seize the Tower, unfortunately dragging the Earl of Warwick into his plans. His conspiracy revealed, he was sentenced to die, as was the unfortunate Earl.

Entering Characters: Warbeck, unrepentant, is facing punishment for his crimes. An earlier pretender to the throne, **Lambert Simnel**, now serves Henry as falconer.

1-12 note how the Constable repeatedly has to warn the mob from climbing onto the platform on which the stocks are placed.

= business. = ie. "there is no avoiding it."

5-6: **Open the hole...that hole** = as a rule, each **hole** in a set of stocks would hold only one leg. Our friends at *PilloryHistory.com*, however, advise us that Ford seems to have, for some strange reason, invented a new kind of stocks, in which two limbs would go into a single hole – a punishment probably without precedent in the real world; such stocks would be impractical: if a hole is large enough for two limbs, then you could never use it to hold only one limb, as it would be too easy for the victim to "simply remove his or her feet through the oversized holes."⁷

= imprison.¹

12	<i>Urs.</i> Yet, Warbeck, clear <u>thy</u> conscience: thou hast tasted	12 <i>f</i> : for the first time in the play, a member of the English court (other than Henry) speaks to Warbeck directly; the nobles will, of course, address him using <i>thee</i> , both as would naturally be used when addressing a member of a lower class, but also signaling contempt.
14	King Henry's mercy liberally; the law Has forfeited thy life; an <u>equal</u> jury	13-15: <i>the law...gallows</i> = in an effort to wrap up the play, Ford awkwardly compresses two years' worth of events – a description of Warbeck's escape attempts, his punishment in stocks, and his sentencing and execution – into a single concluding scene. <i>equal</i> = impartial. <i>doomed</i> (line 15) = sentenced.
16	Have doomed thee to the gallows; twice most wickedly, Most desperately, hast thou escaped the Tower, <u>Inveigling to thy party</u> with thy witchcraft	15-19: <i>twice...attempt</i> = see the note at the beginning of this scene. = seducing to join your cause or plot (<i>party</i>). ¹
18	Young Edward Earl of Warwick, son to Clarence, Whose head must pay the price of that attempt;	18-19: Edward, Earl of Warwick : <i>one of the most pathetic characters never to actually appear in a play, Edward's only crime was to be so close to the throne in blood that he was kept in prison his entire adult life. His unfortunate inclusion in Warbeck's plan to take over the Tower led to his sentence of death. Francis Bacon feelingly wrote, "(thus did) this winding ivy of a Plantagenet kill the true tree itself." For the full story of Edward, see the note at Act III.3.95.</i>
20	Poor gentleman, unhappy in his fate, <u>And ruined by thy cunning!</u> so a <u>mungrel</u>	21: <i>And ruined...cunning</i> = it is because of Warbeck's cleverness (<i>cunning</i> , sarcastic) that the earl is doomed.
22	May pluck the <u>true stag</u> down. Yet, yet, confess	21-22: <i>so a mungrel...down</i> = as in Bacon's quote in the note above at lines 18-19, a metaphor is used to distinguish the true royal person (Edward) from the false one (Warbeck). Note the intense imagery of a <i>mongrel</i> (Warbeck) taking down the noble <i>stag</i> (Edward).
24	Thy parentage; for yet the king has mercy.	<i>mungrel</i> = common alternate form of <i>mongrel</i> . 22-23: <i>Yet...mercy</i> = Warbeck may still save his life if he confesses his fraud!
26	<i>Sim.</i> You would be Dick the Fourth; very likely! Your <u>pedigree is published</u> ; you are known	= (true) ancestry has been revealed and proclaimed. = wanderer (contemptuous). ¹
28	For Osbeck's son of Tournay, a loose <u>runagate</u> , A <u>landloper</u> ; your father was a Jew, Turned Christian merely to repair his miseries:	= one who roves all over the land. ¹ 27-29: Ford borrowed the terms of opprobrium <i>runagate</i> and <i>landloper</i> from Bacon, as well as the detail that Warbeck's father was a " <i>convert Jew</i> " (p. 114).
30	Where's now your kingship?	
32	<i>Warb.</i> <u>Baited</u> to my death?	32: "am I to be tormented to my very last moment?" With <i>baited</i> , Warbeck alludes to one of the era's favourite amusements, in which dogs were set upon a chained-up bear or bull.
34	Intolerable cruelty! I laugh at <u>The Duke of Richmond's practice on</u> my fortunes:	34: <i>The Duke of Richmond's</i> = to the end, Warbeck refuses to acknowledge Henry as the legitimate king. <i>practice</i> = intriguing or scheming against. ^{5,9}

<p>Possession of a crown ne'er wanted heralds.</p> <p>36</p> <p>38 <i>Sim.</i> You will not know who I am?</p> <p>40 <i>Urs.</i> Lambert Simnel, Your predecessor in a dangerous <u>uproar</u>;</p> <p>42 But, on submission, not <u>alone</u> received To grace, but by the king <u>vouchsafed</u> his service.</p> <p>44 <i>Sim.</i> I <u>would be</u> Earl of Warwick, <u>toiled</u> and <u>ruffled</u></p> <p>Against <u>my master</u>, <u>leaped to catch the moon</u>,</p> <p>46 <u>Vaunted</u> my name Plantagenet, as you do; An earl, <u>forsooth</u>! whenas in truth I was, 48 As you are, a <u>mere</u> rascal: yet his majesty, A prince composed of sweetness, – Heaven protect him! – 50 Forgave me all my villainies, reprieved <u>The sentence of a shameful end</u>, <u>admitted</u> 52 My <u>surety</u> of obedience to his service, And I am now his falconer; live plenteously, 54 Eat from the king's purse, and enjoy the sweetness Of liberty and favour; sleep securely: 56 And is not this, now, better than to <u>buffet</u> The hangman's clutches, or to <u>brave</u> the cordage 58 Of a tough <u>halter</u> which will break your neck? –</p> <p>So, then, <u>the gallant totters</u>! – preethee, Perkin,</p> <p>60 Let my example lead <u>thee</u>; be no longer A counterfeit; confess, and hope for pardon.</p> <p>62</p> <p><i>Warb.</i> For pardon! hold, my heart-strings, whiles contempt 64 Of <u>injuries</u>, in scorn, may bid defiance To this base man's foul language! – Thou poor vermin, 66 How dar'st thou creep so near me? thou an earl! Why, thou enjoy'st as much of happiness 68 As all the <u>swinge</u> of slight ambition flew at.</p>	<p>35: "the one who actually possesses the crown never lacks for those ready to proclaim him king", ie. people follow a winner, whether he deserves it or not.</p> <p>37: ie. "you do not recognize me?"</p> <p>= insurrection.¹</p> <p>41-42: by confessing his deceit, Simnel was not only (<i>alone</i>) admitted into the king's favour, but he was even given (<i>vouchsafed</i>) a job!</p> <p>44: <i>would be</i> = ie. impersonated; Simnel ironically claimed to be the very man about to be hanged for scheming to escape with Warbeck. <i>toiled</i> = used in a violent manner.¹ Simnel places the responsibility for his rebellion on those who manipulated him. <i>ruffled</i> = stirred up.¹</p> <p>45: <i>my master</i> = ie. Henry, for whom Simnel now works. <i>leaped to catch the moon</i> = metaphor for Simnel's attempt to achieve an impossible goal, one too far above him – the throne of England.</p> <p>= boasted. = truly (ironic). = complete, absolute.</p> <p>= ie. a hanging. = accepted. = guarantee or promise.</p> <p>= contend or struggle against.¹ = encounter.¹ = noose.</p> <p>= at this moment, Warbeck may appear to waver in his stubborn attitude or look as if he were about to faint; but <i>totter</i> also means "to swing from a rope".^{1,9}</p> <p>= so far, Simnel, being a lowly menial, has used a respectful <i>you</i> with Warbeck; but now, perhaps sensing Warbeck's weakness, he switches to the more familiar and contemptuous <i>thee</i>.</p> <p>= insults.⁵</p> <p>67-68: Simnel's sense of contentment in life corresponds inversely with his low level of ambition. 68: literally, "as the impetus (<i>swinge</i>)⁶ towards which your meager ambition is directed."</p>
---	---

70 A dunghill was thy cradle. So a puddle,
 By virtue of the sunbeams, breathes a vapour
 72 T' infect the purer air, which drops again
 Into the muddy womb that first exhaled it.

74 Bread and a slavish ease, with some assurance
 From the base beadle's whip, crowned all thy hopes:

76 But, sirrah, ran there in thy veins one drop
 Of such a royal blood as flows in mine,
 78 Thou wouldst not change condition, to be second
 In England's state, without the crown itself.
 Coarse creatures are incapable of excellence:
 80 But let the world, as all to whom I am
 This day a spectacle, to time deliver,

82 And by tradition fix posterity
 Without another chronicle than truth,
 84 How constantly my resolution suffered
 A martyrdom of majesty.

86 **Sim.** He's past
 88 Recovery; a Bedlam cannot cure him.

90 **Urs.** Away, inform the king of his behaviour.

92 **Sim.** Perkin, beware the rope! the hangman's coming.

94 [Exit Simnel.]

96 **Urs.** If yet thou hast no pity of thy body,
 Pity thy soul!

98 *Enter Lady Katherine, Jane, Lord Dalyell,
 100 and Earl Of Oxford.*

102 **Jane.** Dear lady!

104 **Oxf.** Whither will 'ee,
 Without respect of shame?

106 **Kath.** Forbear me, sir,
 108 And trouble not the current of my duty. –
 [To Warbeck] O, my loved lord! can any scorn be yours
 110 In which I have no interest – Some kind hand
 Lend me assistance, that I may partake

69-72: **So a puddle...exhaled it** = Warbeck is like the water of a **puddle**, which, when it evaporates, corrupts the air, until it condenses back into water again.

vapour = steam or similar exhalation, usually considered injurious, suggesting something worthless or insubstantial, as Warbeck would consider Simnel to be.¹

72: note that **womb**, used to refer to any place from which something originates, is a metaphor within a metaphor, ie. the **womb** as the **puddle** as a source of the **vapour**.

73-74: Warbeck suggests that Simnel, ignominiously, has been satisfied to have his aspirations limited to being well-fed and living an easy life – his ambitions also curbed by an actual or occasional whipping, or at least the threat of such punishment.

beadle's = a **beadle** was a minor officer charged with dispensing punishment.

77-78: "you would not accept any outcome less than becoming the king."

80-85: Warbeck calls on **posterity** to remember his noble submission to martyrdom rather than confess to something of which he is not guilty.

= general acceptance established for.⁹

= any other.

= steadfastly.

= an insane asylum; London's Bethlehem Hospital (founded 1247) for the insane was referred to as **Bedlam**.

96-97: Urswick, the cleric, warns Warbeck of the consequences (ie. damnation) of dying with a lie on his lips.

104-5: Oxford chides Katherine for dishonouring herself by deigning to visit the common criminal Warbeck.

respect = "considering your".

= "leave me alone".^{1,9}

= disturb.⁶ = course.¹

110: **In which...interest** = ie. "which I do not share."

110-2: **Some kind...penance** = Katherine asks to be

112 Th' infliction of this penance. – My life's dearest,
 114 Forgive me; I have stayed too long from tendering
 Attendance on reproach; yet bid me welcome.

116 **Warb.** Great miracle of constancy! my miseries
 Were never bankrout of their confidence
 118 In worst afflictions, till this; now I feel them.

Report and thy deserts, thou best of creatures,
 120 Might to eternity have stood a pattern
 For every virtuous wife without this conquest.
 122 Thou hast outdone belief; yet may their ruin
 In after-marriages be never pitied,
 124 To whom thy story shall appear a fable!

Why wouldst thou prove so much unkind to greatness
 126 To glorify thy vows by such a servitude?
 I cannot weep; but trust me, dear, my heart
 128 Is liberal of passion. – Harry Richmond,
 A woman's faith hath robbed thy fame of triumph.

130 **Oxf.** Sirrah, leave-off your juggling, and tie up
 132 The devil that ranges in your tongue.

134 **Urs.** Thus witches,
 Possessed, even [to] their deaths deluded, say
 136 They have been wolves and dogs, and sailed in egg-shells

Over the sea, and rid on fiery dragons,
 138 Passed in the air more than a thousand miles,
 All in a night: – the enemy of mankind
 140 Is powerful, but false, and falsehood confident.

142 **Oxf.** Remember, lady, who you are; come from
 That impudent impostor.

144 **Kath.** You abuse us:
 146 For when the holy churchman joined our hands,
 Our vows were real then; the ceremony
 148 Was not in apparition, but in act. –

Be what these people term thee, I am certain

150 Thou art my husband, no divorce in Heaven
 Has been sued-out between us; 'tis injustice
 152 For any earthly power to divide us:
Or we will live or let us die together.
 154 There is a cruël mercy.

placed in the stocks alongside her husband!

113-4: ***I have...reproach*** = Katherine has kept away from
 visiting Warbeck in his disgrace (***reproach***).^{1,6}

116: ***constancy*** = fidelity, faithfulness.

116-8: ***my miseries...feel them*** = Warbeck never felt
 that he had really hit bottom until this moment, when his
 wife appears to share his ***miseries*** with him.

= ie. "your reputation". = own merits.

= an example.

122-4: ***yet may...fable*** = "may failed marriages of the future
 not be pitied for any couple who thinks the story of your
 devotion to me is a fiction (***a fable***), ie. future spouses
 should use Katherine's love as an example to follow; if they
 do not do so, and their marriages fail, it is their own fault.

= filled with emotion. = ie. Henry.

= deceiving.²

= contemporary literature refers frequently to witches
 turning themselves into sundry animals, including
 wolves, dogs, cats and hares.

= travelled.⁶

= ie. Satan.

= deceitful.

= ie. "you are a noble, and he is nothing". Oxford repeats
 his admonition to Katherine.

146-8: even if Warbeck were an imposter with respect to
 his claiming to be royalty, his marriage to Katherine is
 real.

= perhaps the first and only acknowledgement from
 Katherine that Warbeck might not be who he claims
 to be.

= filed for in court.¹

= either.

156-162 (below): briefly, "despite Henry's tyranny, I am
 still a monarch when it comes to the love and loyalty of
 my wife." The entire speech by Warbeck is a particularly

156 **Warb.** Spite of tyranny
 We reign in our affections, blessed woman!
 158 Read in my destiny the wrack of honour;
 Point out, in my contempt of death, to memory
 160 Some miserable happiness; since herein,
 Even when I fell, I stood enthroned a monarch
 162 Of one chaste wife's troth pure and uncorrupted.
 Fair angel of perfection, immortality
 164 Shall raise thy name up to an adoration,

 Court every rich opinion of true merit,
 166 And saint it in the calendar of Virtue,
 When I am turned into the self-same dust
 168 Of which I was first formed.

 170 **Oxf.** The lord ambassador,
 Huntley, your father, madam, should 'a look on
 172 Your strange subjection in a gaze so public,

 Would blush on your behalf, and wish his country
 174 Unleft for entertainment to such sorrow.

 176 **Kath.** Why art thou angry, Oxford? I must be
 More péremptory in my duty. – [To Warbeck] Sir,

 178 Impute it not unto immodesty
 That I presume to press you to a legacy
 180 Before we part for ever.

 182 **Warb.** Let it be, then,
 My heart, the rich remains of all my fortunes.
 184
 186 **Kath.** Confirm it with a kiss, pray.

 188 **Warb.** O, with that
 I wish to breathe my last! upon thy lips,
 Those equal twins of comeliness, I seal
 190 The testament of honourable vows:

 192 [Kisses her.]

 194 Whoever be that man that shall unkiss

 This sacred print next, may he prove more thrifty
 196 In this world's just applause, not more desertful!

 198 **Kath.** By this sweet pledge of both our souls, I swear
 To die a faithful widow to thy bed;
 200 Not to be forced or won: O, never, never!

 202 Enter Earls of Surrey, Huntley, and Crawford,
 and Lord Dawbney.
 204

pretty one, honouring the loyal Katherine.

= persecution.⁹

= remembrance, ie. posterity.

= loyalty in marriage.¹

64: "shall make you an object of worship" (Anderson, p. 100).⁹

= valued, high.⁶ = those whose opinions matter.

= enroll as a formally recognized saint.¹

172: "your bizarre degrading of yourself in front of all these onlookers".

173-4: **wish his...sorrow** = "wish he never left Scotland in order to be saddened by this spectacle."

= resolute, fixed;¹ **péremptory** was stressed on its first syllable in this era.

179-180: Katherine asks Warbeck for something to remember him by.

= typical Elizabethan imagery for lips.

194-5: **that shall...next** = ie. who will replace Warbeck in Katherine's affections.

print (line 195) = imprint.

= prosperous.¹

= ie. in receiving. = perhaps, "if not more deserving than I."

198-200: *despite her vow delivered here, Katherine went on to marry and survive two husbands, then married a third time, before herself dying in 1537; but see the note at line 210 below, which explains why she did this.*

206 **Dawb.** Free the condemnèd person; quickly free him!
What, has 'a yet confessed?

208 [Perkin Warbeck is taken out of the stocks.]

210 **Urs.** [To Dawbney] Nothing to purpose;
212 But still he will be king.

Sur. Prepare your journey
214 To a new kingdom, then, unhappy madman,
Wilfully foolish! –
[To Huntley] See, my lord ambassador,
216 Your lady daughter will not leave the counterfeit
In this disgrace of fate.

218 **Hunt.** I never pointed
220 Thy marriage, girl; but yet, being married,
Enjoy thy duty to a husband freely.
222 The griefs are mine. I glory in thy constancy;
And must not say I wished that I had missed
224 Some partage in these trials of a patience.

226 **Kath.** You will forgive me, noble sir?

228 **Hunt.** Yes, yes;
In every duty of a wife and daughter
230 I dare not disavow thee. To your husband, –
For such you are, sir, – I impart a farewell
232 Of manly pity; what your life has passed through,
The dangers of your end will make apparent;
234 And I can add, for comfort to your sufferance,
No cordial, but the wonder of your frailty,

236 Which keeps so firm a station. We are parted.

238 **Warb.** We are. A crown of peace renew thy age,
Most honourable Huntley! – Worthy Crawford!
240 We may embrace; I never thought thee injury.

242 **Craw.** Nor was I ever guilty of neglect
Which might procure such thought. I take my leave, sir.

244 **Warb.** To you, Lord Dalyell, – what? accept a sigh,
246 'Tis hearty and in earnest.

248 **Daly.** I want utterance;
My silence is my farewell.

250 **Kath.** Oh, oh!

252 **Jane.** Sweet madam,
254 What do you mean? –
[To Dalyell] My lord, your hand.

205: ie. meaning only to remove Warbeck from the stocks.

210-1: Urswick updates Dawbney on Warbeck's unchanged status.
Actually, Warbeck wrote out a lengthy and detailed confession and story of his life after his second arrest. Katherine was said to have been humiliated by the whole thing.

= the quarto prints *madam* here, emended as shown by all editors.

= "I was not the one who arranged".
= perhaps a disyllable.

222-4: *I glory...patience* = though not a fan of Warbeck, Huntley appreciates Katherine's loyalty to her husband.
= experiencing a share.

= to give some. = suffering.
235: *cordial* = "restorative or medicine (to cheer you)".¹
the wonder of = admiration for.
frailty = body or person.

= ie. calm, unperturbed.
= ie. "make you young again".
= ie. wished.

242-3: *Nor was...thought* = "I never did anything to cause you to wish any harm to me". Gibson suggests that Warbeck and Crawford embrace here.

= ie. "I am unable to speak."

251: Katherine begins to swoon.

256	Daly.	Dear lady,	
258	Be pleased that I may <u>wait</u> 'ee to your lodging.		= attend. ¹
260		[<i>Exeunt Lord Dalyell and Jane, supporting Lady Katherine.</i>]	
262		<i>Enter Sheriff and Officers with Sketon, Astley, Heron, and John A-Water, with halters about their necks.</i>	
264			
266	Oxf. Look 'ee; behold your followers, appointed		
268	To wait on 'ee in death!		
270	Warb.	Why, peers of England,	
272	We'll lead 'em on courageously: – I read		
274	A triumph over tyranny upon		
276	Their <u>several</u> foreheads. – Faint not in the moment		= individual.
278	Of victory! our ends, and Warwick's head,		
	<u>Innocent Warwick's head</u> , – for we are prologue		= <i>having been sentenced in a trial before the Earl of Oxford for conspiracy to depose the king, Edward, Earl of Warwick, was beheaded on Tower-Hill on 28 November 1499.</i>
276	But to his tragedy, – conclude the wonder		
278	Of Henry's fears; and then the glorious race		
	Of <u>fourteen kings</u> , Plantagenets, <u>determines</u>		278: <i>fourteen kings</i> = the 14 <i>Plantagenets</i> began with Henry II and ended with Richard III. <i>determines</i> = concludes. ¹
	In this <u>last issue male</u> ; Heaven be obeyed!		= Edward, the Earl of Warwick, was the last living Plantagenet descended from kings, and his execution relieved Henry once and for all of anxiety over the rise of any further legitimate claimant to the throne.
280	Impoverish time of its amazement, friends,		
282	And we will prove as trusty in our <u>payments</u>		= ie. payment of debt to nature, ie. death: a common image of life as having been borrowed from Providence.
284	As prodigal to nature in our debts.		
286	Death? pish! 'tis but a sound; a name of air;		
288	A minute's storm, or not so much: to tumble		284-8: <i>to tumble...manhood</i> = the era's plays pay frequent tribute to the inefficacy of doctors: there is nothing worse than dying slowly from some disease or injury as a result of incompetent doctors who only prolong life without curing the patient, or alleviating the suffering.
290	From bed to bed, be massacred alive		
292	By some physicians, for a month or two,		
294	In hope of freedom from a fever's torments,		
296	Might <u>stagger manhood</u> ; here the pain is past		288: <i>stagger manhood</i> = cause manly courage to fail.
298	<u>Ere sensibly</u> 'tis felt. Be men of spirit!		288-9: <i>here the pain...felt</i> = at least when you are executed, the end is immediate and comes before any pain is felt. <i>Ere sensibly is felt</i> = ie. before it can be felt by the senses.
300	Spurn coward passion! so illustrious mention		
302	Shall <u>blaze</u> our names, and <u>style</u> us kings o'er Death.		= proclaim. = call.
304	Dawb. Away, impostor <u>beyond</u> precedent!		= without.
306		[<i>Exeunt Sheriff and Officers with the Prisoners.</i>]	
308	No chronicle records his fellow.		297: there is no one quite like Warbeck recorded anywhere

298 **Hunt.** I have
 300 Not thoughts left: 'tis sufficient in such cases
 Just laws ought to proceed.
 302
 304 *Enter King Henry, the Bishop of Durham, and Hialas.*
 306 **K. Hen.** We are resolved.
 Your business, noble lords, shall find success
 Such as your king impórtunes.
 308
 310 **Hunt.** You are gracious.
 312 **K. Hen.** Perkin, we are informed, is armed to die;
 In that we'll honour him. Our lords shall follow
 To see the execution; and from hence
 314 We gather this fit use, – that public states,
 As our particular bodies, taste most good
 316 In health when purgèd of corrupted blood.

318 [Exeunt.]

EPILOGUE

1 Here has appeared, though in a several fashion,
 2 The threats of majesty, the strength of passion,
 Hopes of an empire, change of fortunes; all
 4 What can to theätres of greatness fall,
 Proving their weak foundations. Who will please,
 6 Amongst such several sights, to censure these
 No births abortive, nor a bastard brood, –

in the history books.

304f: Henry addresses Huntley and the Scots.
 = ie. successful resolution.
 = ie. James. = has sought; stressed on the second syllable.

= prepared.

314: **We gather...use** = ie. "we learn this lesson."
fit use = doctrinal deduction (a puritanical expression).³
 314-6: **public...blood** = nations (**public states**)¹ are
 healthiest when, like living creatures, malignant or harmful
 internal threats are removed.
taste = feel⁹ or experience.⁶

Postscript: *despite having married Henry's daughter Margaret in 1503, James declared war on his southern neighbour in 1513, in response to Henry's invading France, Scotland's traditional ally. James invaded England with an army of more than 30,000 men in the late summer of that year, meeting a smaller English army at Flodden, near the village of Branxton. September 9th, 1513, was one of the most disastrous days in Scottish history: the entire army was destroyed with unknown thousands of casualties. Most of the upper nobility of Scotland was wiped out; this included the death of James himself. James left behind a son, one-year old James V.*

The Epilogue: note that the Epilogue is written in rhyming couplets.

= diverse forms,⁹ or "a mode suitable to each" (Gibson, p. 335).⁶

3-4: **all...foundations** = ie. everything that can lead to the failure of a cause if it is not backed by strength and legitimacy: an architectural metaphor.
theatres = a tri-syllable.

5-7: **Who will...brood** = briefly, "those who will not judge (**censure**)⁵ these various scenes (**several sights**)⁶ to be deficient"; note how Ford employs such a startling metaphor of a stillborn (**abortive**)¹ birth and illegitimacy to describe how displeased critics might describe his play.

8 | Shame to a parentage or fosterhood, –
10 | May warrant by their loves all just excuses,
And often find a welcome to the Muses.

FINIS

= the rearing up of (another's) child.¹

9-10: "will assure by their approval all excuses for any failures of the play, and thus be welcome to return to the theatre in the future."⁶ Ford is inviting applause from his audience.⁶

the Muses = the nine mythological sisters were sponsors and protectors of all the arts.

Footnotes.

Footnotes in the text correspond as follows:

1. *Oxford English Dictionary* (OED) online.
2. Crystal, David and Ben. *Shakespeare's Words*. London; New York: Penguin, 2002.
3. Ellis, Havelock, ed. *The Best Plays of the Old Dramatists: John Ford*. London: Viztelly & Co., 1888.
4. Smith, W., ed. *A Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology*. London: John Murray, 1849.
5. Pickburn, J.P., and Brereton, J. Le Gay, eds. *Perkin Warbeck by John Ford*. Sydney: George Robertson & Co., 1896.
6. Gibson, Colin, ed. *The Selected Plays of John Ford*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 1986.
7. *PilloryHistory.com* Website. *What are stocks and pillories?* Retrieved 7/1/2017: [http://www.pilloryhistory.com/What\(index\).html](http://www.pilloryhistory.com/What(index).html).
8. *The Encyclopedia Britannica*. 11th edition. New York: 1911.
9. Anderson, Jr., Donald K., ed. *Perkin Warbeck*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1965.
10. *Northern Arizona University* Website. *Celtic Dress of the 16th C*. Retrieved 6/25/2017: <https://jan.ucc.nau.edu/~wew/celt-clothing/>.
11. Dyce, Alexander. *The Works of John Ford*, Vol. II. London: Robson and Son, 1869.
12. Halliwell, James O. *A Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words*. London: John Russell Smith, 1878.
13. *The Guardian* Website. *Why the princes in the tower are staying six feet under*. Retrieved 7/4/2017. www.theguardian.com/science/2013/feb/05/princes-in-tower-staying-under.
14. *Bank of England* Website. *Inflation Calculator*. Retrieved 6/28/2017: <http://www.bankofengland.co.uk/education/Pages/resources/inflationtools/calculator/default.aspx>.
15. Sugden, Edward. *A Topographical Dictionary to the Works of Shakespeare and His Fellow Dramatists*. Manchester: The University Press, 1925.
16. Jackson, MacDonald P., and Neill, Michael, eds. *The Selected Plays of John Marston*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986.
17. Dunbar, Sir Archibald. *Scottish Kings, a Revised Chronology of Scottish History 1005-1625*. Edinburgh: David Douglas, 1906.
18. *Park Grand London Hotels* website. *The History of Westminster Palace*. Retrieved 1/12/2022: www.parkgrandlondon.com/blog/the-history-of-westminster-palace/.
19. *archers.org* Website. *A Short History of the English Longbow*. Retrieved 6/26/2017: www.archers.org/?page_id=421.